

Warren,
Hardy
Spanish

**FOUNDATION
COURSE**

**LEVEL 1
Power Verbs**

For your learning convenience, we have provided the best quality materials available.

This book has a special binder called Otabind. It will lay perfectly flat and even fold back without breaking the spine. The more you use it, the more comfortable it will become.

The paper is 60-pound white bond paper - easy to write on, bright to look at and opaque.

I hope you enjoy your study experience.

MEXICAN SPANISH

If you want to speak Spanish with Mexicans, this is the book for you. Remember, not all Spanish is alike and many words used in Spain are different in Mexico. All words used in this course are commonly used in Mexico. The Warren Hardy School is located in San Miguel de Allende, Guanajuato, México.

To my students who for the past 30 years have taught me to be a better teacher.

Previous publications:

1994, 1996, 1998, 2000, 2001, 2004

Copyright 2007 by Warren Hardy.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical including photocopy, recording, or any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from Warren Hardy, Alba 6, San Miguel de Allende, Gto. 37700, Mexico, Tel./fax: 011-52-415-2-4728. www.warrenhardy.com



Uniting people through language learning
and cultural understanding

Welcome to the Foundation Course! This is the WorkBook for the first of four levels, which together will make up the firm foundation on which you will develop your skills to speak the Spanish language.

The bricks in this foundation are:

- the one hundred most common Spanish verbs and their tenses.
- the basic Spanish grammar.

Your tools are:

- this WorkBook
- its accompanying CDs or cassettes
- the VerbCards
- the GameCards.

All this “construction” may sound like work to you, but it’s not. This course is easy; in fact I am very excited for you because I know that you will be able to learn Spanish with this system. Why? Because over the past ten years I have perfected it with the help of thousands of students.

The purpose of this Foundation course is to put into place the verb tenses and basic Spanish grammar. Once this foundation is in place, you will be able to confidently develop your speaking skills as you engage people in Spanish.

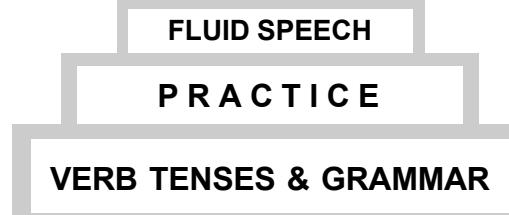
My job is to guide you and make learning easy and fun. Your job is to conscientiously do the WorkBooks, practice with the audios, and speak Spanish whenever you can. If you do this, I promise you the results you are seeking.

After completing this first level you will be able to use Spanish to effectively communicate your needs. You will be able to meet new friends, travel, and get the things you want when you want them. You will realize that Spanish is easy and be rewarded with success.

So let’s get going. Be sure to carefully read the learning steps on the next pages before you begin the WorkBook.

And remember... learning Spanish is a game
so have fun!

Sincerely,
Warren Hardy



What is your goal?

Warren Hardy Spanish offers four levels of instruction designed to take you to a High Conversational Level. This course will prepare you to practice Spanish with native speakers, so you may develop Fluid speech. By doing the coursework and practicing with native speakers, you will develop your skills through the following stages. These guidelines are set by the American Council on the Teaching of Foreign Languages.

FUNCTIONAL

- You can manage straightforward social protocol.
- You can communicate your needs and wants in short, often incomplete sentences in present time.
- Your vocabulary is limited to basic objects.
- You have difficulty formulating questions.

Level 1: Power Verbs
20 hours of practice with native speakers
Working vocabulary: 200 words

HIGH FUNCTIONAL

- You sometimes appear fluent with social protocol.
- You can create short sentences with difficulty in present, past, and future time.
- Your vocabulary is limited to basic information such as time, numbers, months, home, directions and immediate needs.
- You still have difficulty formulating questions.

Level 2: Preterite tense & Object Pronouns
40 hours of practice with native speakers
Working vocabulary: 300 words

CONVERSATIONAL

- You are fluent with social protocol.
- You can handle predictable situations and personal needs in present, past, and future time.
- Your conversation is reactive and there is a struggle to answer direct questions.
- Your speech is filled with hesitancy and inaccuracies.
- You can be understood in spite of frequent misunderstandings.
- You are capable of asking a variety of questions to obtain information about basic needs.
- You are able to self correct.

Level 3: Imperfect, Present & Minor Tenses
Seven-tense Integration
60 hours of conversation with native speakers
Working vocabulary: 400 words

HIGH CONVERSATIONAL

- You are fluid in straight-forward social situations.
- You can discuss personal information, family relations, home, daily activities, interests, personal preferences, physical and social needs.
- You usually communicate reactively responding to direct questions.
- You are able to link ideas using the nine Spanish tenses.
- Your speech contains pauses, reformations, and self corrections while searching for adequate vocabulary and appropriate language forms.

Level 4: Present and Past Subjunctive
Nine-tense Integration
100 hours of conversation with native speakers
Working vocabulary: 600 words

FLUID

developed in a total immersion environment

- You are able to converse with ease and confidence when dealing with most routine tasks and social situations.
- You are able to narrate and describe in all tenses using discourse of paragraph length.
- You sometimes have hesitation going from tense to tense but you can self-correct.

FLUENT

- You are able to speak fluently without hesitation in both languages in most topics of discussion.
- Must speak only the target language and live in the culture for a year or more.

BILINGUAL

- You grow up speaking both languages and assimilating both cultures simultaneously.
- Vocabulary is equal in both languages.

Introduction to Power Verbs

v

The purpose of Level 1 is to teach you to function in Spanish ... to communicate what you need and want ... when you need and want it ... and to understand the needs and wants of others. Power Verbs will enable you to do this.

Power Verbs are verbs like *I need, I want, I can, I like, and I am going to.*

You can connect other verbs to Power Verbs. For example:

*I need to eat. I need to go.
I want to leave. I want to order.
I am going to work. I am going to pay.*

This is what makes these particular verbs so powerful. As you do this course, you will learn to combine these Power Verbs with 100 of the most common verbs (the verbs in your VerbCards packet) enabling you to make hundreds of sentences.

In this course you will also learn Basic Social Protocol... those magic phrases that help you to appear like an educated and well meaning person. Hispanic cultures are steeped in social tradition and it pays to say the magic phrases... *always with a smile.*

At the back of the book you will find six useful dialogues and additional vocabulary, which includes cognates (words that are the same in Spanish and English), common adjectives and the 500 most common Mexican nouns in categories.

Keep in mind that this is an integrated learning System.

The WorkBooks, VerbCards, GameCards, CD/Cassettes all work together to help you learn to read, write, and speak Spanish so you can enjoy practicing with native speakers. You can also take Warren Hardy classes in San Miguel de Allende. Each component has its purpose.

- 1) **The self-grading WorkBook** will visually and efficiently teach you the verb forms and grammatical concepts. Fill in the blanks and correct your answers. All the explanations are succinct and in English.
- 2) **The Audios** are recorded directly from the answer pages in the WorkBook. They will develop your understanding and pronunciation skills.
- 3) **The VerbCards** contain the 100 most common verbs with the meanings in English and the conjugations with all their forms on the back. The Foundation Course is simplified by using only these common verbs.
- 4) **The GameCards** develop your vocabulary and usage. They can be used alone, with another student, or any Spanish speaker.
- 5) The **Warren Hardy Classes** integrate all these materials with classroom study, which will accelerate your ability to speak with and understand native speakers. Consult www.warrenhardy.com for course schedules.
- 6) The **Warren Hardy website:** www.warrenhardy.com, offers free learning to enhance your vocabulary and an online game that reviews the Power Verbs course.

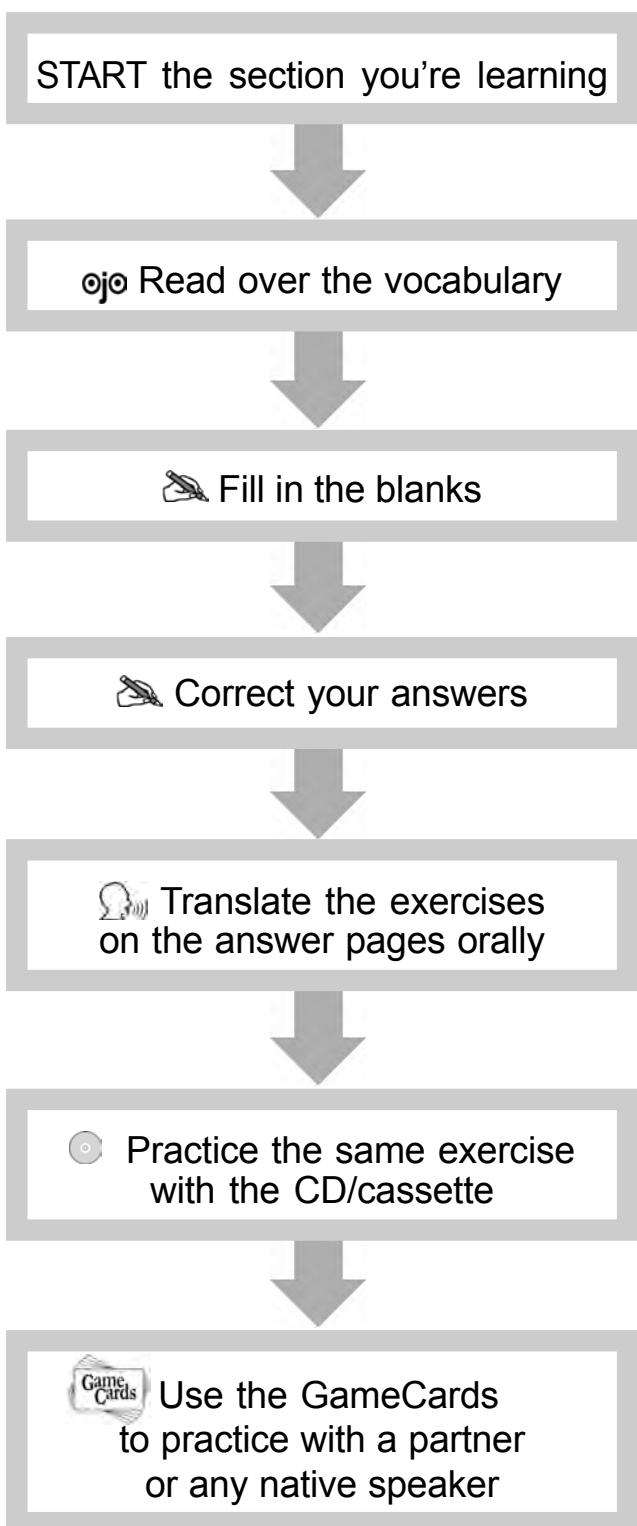
Take these materials and work with them. Do the WorkBook. Practice with the audios. Find someone to practice with using the GameCards.

Learning takes place a step at a time. With dedication and practice, you can speak Spanish well. First you have to know *how* to say what you want. This course will teach you that... and then you must practice.

How to study

This workbook is part of an integrated learning system that is based on the latest research in second-language acquisition. If you follow the simple steps outlined within, I guarantee you the maximum learning experience.

Here are the steps you need to follow to develop your reading, writing and speaking skills.



Here are the icons that will tell you how to use each page.

ojo! = Look! Study this page.

Spoken exercise

Timed exercise

Practice with the CD/cassette

Use the GameCards

Use the VerbCards

Translate from English to Spanish

Translate from Spanish to English

Answers

Vocabulary preparation

Vocabulary quiz

Grade

The audios are recorded directly from the WorkBook. The disc icon in the WorkBook tells you that a given page is recorded and where the recording is found on CD or cassette.

The voices are recorded at normal “native” speed. While you are familiarizing yourself with the information and developing your ear, you will want to read along with the book. Many people report that after a few times through, they just let the audios play in their car or at home. Whatever you do, listen and practice. Keep in mind that your goal is to speak and understand Spanish. The audios will develop your ability to do this. More is better.

You can use the audios in several ways:

1. Listen and repeat in Spanish. This develops pronunciation skills.
2. Translate from Spanish to English. This develops understanding.
3. Answer in Spanish. This develops usage.

The audios help you to respond at a natural speed in the space given. Your ultimate goal is to be able to answer in Spanish in the space given without the aid of the book.

Here is a detailed guide that gives you the page number and the material covered.

NOTE: The number under “CD” refers to the CD number (1, 2 or 3) and the track.
The number under “cassette” refers to the cassette number and side.

page	title	time	CD	cassette
2-3	Social protocol	1:54	1-1	1A
4	Numbers, days and seasons	2:55	1-3	1A
6	Alphabet and pronunciation	4:44	1-4	1A
5	-AR verbs	3:55	1-5	1A
14	Time Frames	3:29	1-6	1A
15	Glue words	3:11	1-7	1A
22	¿Necesita? Necesito	5:25	1-8	1A
28	¿Quiere? Quiero	5:15	1-9	1A
30	-ER and -IR verbs	1:50	1-10	1B
38	¿Va a? Voy a	6:28	1-11	1B
42	Integration drill, ‘you’ and ‘I’	2:13	1-12	1B
46	¿Puede? Puedo	5:31	1-13	1B

CONTINUED ON NEXT PAGE

CONTINUED FROM PREVIOUS PAGE

page	title	time	CD	cassette
54	¿Le gusta? Me gusta	6:00	1-14	1B
60	¿Tiene que? Tengo que	6:36	1-15	1B
64	Uses of tener, hay	3:31	2-1	2A
67	Por vs. para	3:15	2-2	2A
70	Power verbs Integration, you and I	1:51	2-3	2A
73	Common verbs quiz	6:03	2-4	2A
79-81	Power verbs review, 'you' and 'I'	12:22	2-5	2A
87	'We' forms	3:32	2-6	2A
89	Necesitar conjugation	2:38	2-7	2B
92	Necesitar spoken exercise	4:11	2-8	2B
93	Querer conjugation	2:12	2-9	2B
95	Querer spoken exercise	3:43	2-10	2B
96	Ir conjugation	1:59	2-11	2B
98	Ir spoken exercise	3:47	2-12	2B
99	Poder conjugation	2:26	2-13	2B
101	Poder spoken exercise	4:09	2-14	2B
102	Tener conjugation	2:26	3-1	3A
104	Tener spoken exercise	4:11	3-2	3A
105	Gustar conjugation	2:43	3-3	3A
107	Gustar spoken exercise	4:22	3-4	3A
109	Gustar with things	2:38	3-5	3A
117	Reflexive verbs	3:56	3-6	3A
127	Ser and estar conjugation	3:53	3-7	3A
129	Ser and estar answers	2:55	3-8	3A
133	Power verb rolodexing	1:52	3-9	3B
134	Power verb conjugation, all forms	3:46	3-10	3B
137	Power verb quiz, all forms	5:44	3-11	3B
148-151	Final Exam	14:16	3-12	3B

Voices Dr. Emilio Cardenas and Rocio Ruiz Carreón

Section I: SOCIAL PROTOCOL

Social protocol	2
Numbers, days and seasons	4

Section II: BASIC GRAMMAR

Alphabet & pronunciation	6
Nouns (things)	7
Verbs (action words), Common -AR verbs	9
'I' and 'you' (formal) forms	12
Power verbs	13
Time frames	14
Glue Words	15
Creating sentences	16

Section III: POWER VERB EXERCISES, 'You' (formal) and 'I'

<i>NECESITAR</i> : to need	19
Negative answer	21
<i>QUERER</i> : to want	26
Common -ER and -IR verbs	30
Time frames / The personal 'a'	34
Before and after / to and from	35
<i>IR A</i> : to be going to	36
Direct object pronouns: 'me, you, him, her, us, them'	43
<i>PODER</i> : to be able	44
Why and because	50
This, that, these and those	51
<i>GUSTAR</i> : to like	52
<i>TENER QUE</i> : to have to	58
Uses of <i>TENER</i>	62
<i>HAY</i> = There is / there are	63
<i>POR</i> vs. <i>PARA</i>	65

SECTION IV: POWER VERBS REVIEW, 'You' (formal) & 'I'

Power verbs integration quiz	70
Common verbs quiz	72
Power verbs review	74

Section V: POWER VERBS CONJUGATION, Present tense

Power verbs, 'we' forms	85
Spanish verb conjugation	88
<i>NECESITAR</i> conjugation	89
How to make a question	90
<i>QUERER</i> conjugation	93
<i>IR</i> conjugation	96
<i>PODER</i> conjugation	99
<i>TENER</i> conjugation	102
<i>GUSTAR</i> conjugation	105
<i>GUSTAR</i> with things	108

X Table of contents

Section VI: REFLEXIVE VERBS

REFLEXIVE VERBS and memory tips	113
Using Reflexive verbs	114
Reflexive pronouns	115
Reflexive verbs	116

Section VII: SER AND ESTAR

Introduction to <i>SER</i> and <i>ESTAR</i>	121
<i>SER</i> conjugation and uses	122
<i>ESTAR</i> conjugation and uses	123
<i>SER</i> vs. <i>ESTAR</i>	128

Section VIII: GENERAL REVIEW, QUIZZES & FINAL EXAM

Power verb conjugations	133
Common verbs	138
Time frames	141
Glue words	142
Final Exam	144
Final Exam answers	148
Final Exam grading	152
What's Next?	153
Recommended Supplementary study materials	154

Section IX: DIALOGS

What's Your Name	157
Where Do You Live	157
In the Restuarant	158
At the Bus Station	159
At the Market	160
At the Bank	161
Breakfast Date	162
New Friend	163

Section X: VOCABULARY

Common Nouns	164
Noun Cognates	167
Common Adjectives	168
Adjective Cognates	169

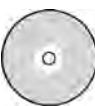
Section XI: GLOSSARY

English to Spanish	172
Spanish to English	177

Section I

SOCIAL PROTOCOL

Social protocol



To be functional in Spanish, you must be familiar with social protocol.

The basis of social protocol in the hispanic culture is acknowledging the presence of another person when you enter or leave their space. This is usually done with a

1. a greeting
2. a farewell
3. a request for space or attention
4. a blessing on their meal

It is considered rude and reflects badly on your mother (who gave you a poor education) if you don't use appropriate protocol.

1. The greetings are cheerfully said to everyone you pass, especially to all with whom you make eye contact.



- **BUENOS DÍAS** = "Good morning," used from daylight until noon.
- **BUENAS TARDES** = "Good afternoon," used from noon until 7 P.M. or dark.
- **BUENAS NOCHES** = Good evening from 7 P.M. or dark. Sometimes it may get dark before 7 P.M.
- **ADIÓS** can be said to a person in passing. For example anytime you pass someone on the street and you make eye contact, it is good to say *adiós*.

Adiós literally means "to God" and is considered a high greeting, not just good-bye.

- **HOLA** = "Hi." It is an informal greeting which can be used with children or good friends. Otherwise, it is usually combined with a formal greeting like this:

HOLA, BUENOS DÍAS = "Hi, good morning."

If you know the person, it is common to ask how they are doing. For example:



- **BUENOS DÍAS ¿CÓMO ESTÁ?** =
"Good morning. How are you (formal)?"
or
BUENOS DÍAS ¿CÓMO ESTÁS?
(informal)

A quick dialogue may go something like this:

- **BUENOS DÍAS, ¿CÓMO ESTÁ?** =
"Good morning, How are you?"
- **MUY BIÉN GRACIAS ¿Y USTED?** =
"Very well, thank you. And you?"

2. Farewells are usually said with:



- **ADIÓS. HASTA LUEGO.** =
"Goodbye, until later."
or
- **ADIÓS. BUENAS NOCHES.** =
"Goodbye, good night."

It is common at a party to go around and say good night to everyone present before one leaves. This is called a *despedida*.

3. Request for space or attention is very important.

In Mexico, people have a different level of spatial comfort than in the U.S. or Canada, where people may feel uncomfortable when someone is closer than arm's length.

In Mexico people are comfortable at elbow's length. As a result it is common for people to seem to be crowding, or to be "balled up."

If you need space to pass by, simply say:



- **CON PERMISO, POR FAVOR** = "With your permission, please."

This request will quickly be answered by people moving and sometimes saying:

- **PROPIO** = "It's yours."

As you pass through, you can say:

- **GRACIAS, ADIÓS** = "Thank you, goodbye."

Con permiso is also used to request attention. In hispanic cultures the attendants in a retail store will usually not wait on you until you request help unless you are in a tourist area.

So in most cases they will linger back attentively until you ask for help. Raising your hand and saying *con permiso, por favor* will get you service. And don't forget to smile!

Waiters will not bring you the check at a restaurant until you ask for it. It is considered rude and is like asking you to leave if they bring you the check without your request. When you are ready for the check, simply call the waiter or waitress with a raising of the hand and say:



- **LA CUENTA, POR FAVOR.** = "The check, please."
- **JOVEN, SEÑORITA** (to get the attention of a waiter/waitress ... if the waiter is older, you can say **SEÑOR** or **SEÑORA**)
- it's considered rude to call a working person by their occupation, e.g. *mesero* or *mesera*.

When you leave don't forget to say:

- **MUCHAS GRACIAS** and smile!
It is good to be generous with tips.

4. When you enter the space where someone is eating, it is courteous to say:



- **BUEN PROVECHO.**

This translates as "I hope you get the most from your meal." It is a blessing on their meal. People will always look up, smile, and say **GRACIAS**.

It is common in a restaurant to say *buen provecho* as you pass a table of people eating, whether you make eye-contact or not. People really appreciate this gesture and it is a sign of good breeding.

Using these four areas of social protocol has many benefits.

1. It connects you with other people and helps you to overcome your psychological fears about using Spanish. When you do this and people respond, there is a little voice in the back of your mind that says, "Yes, this language is real and it works!" This connection is very empowering.

2. It shows respect for the hispanic people and lets them know that you are indeed "educated" and know the social niceties of their culture.

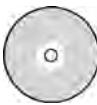
This is important because hispanics usually perceive Americans as cold or even rude because we don't commonly greet each other in our culture.

Use the social protocol every day, everywhere. It is important. *Es muy importante.*

You will need these:

- No Entiendo** = I don't understand.
- Repita por favor** = Repeat please.
- Despacio por favor** = Slowly please.
- No hablo español muy bien** =
I don't speak Spanish very well.
- Necesito practicar mi español** =
I need to practice my Spanish.
- Gracias por su paciencia.** =
Thank you for your patience.

Numbers, days and seasons



¿CUÁNTO CUESTA? = How much does it cost?

- 1 **uno**
- 2 **dos**
- 3 **tres**
- 4 **cuatro**
- 5 **cinco**
- 6 **seis**
- 7 **siete**
- 8 **ocho**
- 9 **nueve**
- 10 **diez**
- 11 **once**
- 12 **doce**
- 13 **trece**
- 14 **catorce**
- 15 **quince**
- 16 **dieciséis**
- 17 **diecisiete**
- 18 **dieciocho**
- 19 **diecinueve**

- 20 **veinte**, veintiuno, veintidós ...
- 30 **treinta**, treinta y uno ...
- 40 **cuarenta**, cuarenta y uno ...
- 50 **cincuenta**, cincuenta y uno ...
- 60 **sesenta**, sesenta y uno ...
- 70 **setenta**, setenta y uno ...
- 80 **ochenta**, ochenta y uno ...
- 90 **noventa**, noventa y uno ...
- 100 **cien**
- 101 **ciento uno**
- 150 **ciento cincuenta**
- 200 **doscientos**
- 300 **trescientos**
- 400 **cuatrocientos**
- 500 **quinientos**
- 600 **seiscientos**
- 700 **setecientos**
- 800 **ochocientos**
- 900 **novecientos**
- 1,000 **mil**

Days of the Week*

- | | |
|-----------|---------------------|
| Monday | el lunes |
| Tuesday | el martes |
| Wednesday | el miércoles |
| Thursday | el jueves |
| Friday | el viernes |
| Saturday | el sábado |
| Sunday | el domingo |

Seasons

- | | |
|--------|---------------------|
| Spring | la primavera |
| Summer | el verano |
| Fall | el otoño |
| Winter | el invierno |

-
- *1. Days of the week in Spanish are not capitalized.
 - 2. *Es lunes* = It is Monday.
 - 3. When you use the *el*, it translates as 'on.' *El lunes* = on Monday.

Section II

BASIC GRAMMAR

Alphabet & pronunciation

Disc 1 track 4
Cassette 1 side A



There are only five vowels, and each vowel has only one sound.

Spanish Vowels

A (ah)

The A is made by saying "ah" with the jaw dropped, as in "ball."

E (ay)

The E is made by grinning wide, then saying "ay," as in "hay."

I (ee)

The I is made by saying "ee," as in "cheese."

O (oh)

The O is made by saying "oh," as in "okay."

U (ew)

The U is made by saying "ew" as in "new."

Spanish Syllables

Notice how the vowels combine with consonants to create the syllables that make up Spanish words. Breaking a word into syllables makes it easier to pronounce.

Only two consonants change sounds when they combine with different vowels. The "c" sound in ce and ci become soft to create "say" and "see," and the "g" sound in ge and gi is pronounced "hay" and "hee." The "h" is silent in Spanish and the "z" is pronounced like an "s." Practice this exercise with the CD/cassette.

ba be bi bo bu
ca **ce** **ci** co cu
da de di do du
fa fe fi fo fu
ga **ge** **gi** go gu
ha he hi ho hu

ja je ji jo ju
la le li lo lu
ma me mi mo mu
na ne ni no nu
ña ñe ñi ño ñu
pa pe pi po pu

ra re ri ro ru
sa se si so su
ta te ti to tu
va ve vi vo vu
ya ye yi yo yu
za ze zi zo zu

Practice the alphabet with the CD/cassette and learn to spell your last name.

Spanish Alphabet

A (ah)	B (bay)	C (say)	Ch (chay)	D (day)	E (ay)
F (ef-fay)	G (hay)	H (ah-chay)	I (ee-latina)	J (ho-tah)	K (kah)
L (el-lay)	LL (el-yay)	M (em-may)	N (en-nay)	Ñ (en-yay)	O (oh)
P (pay)	Q (coo)	R (eh-ray)	RR (eh-rray)	S (es-say)	T (tay)
U (ew)	V (bay)	W (do-blai ew)	X (eh-kees)	Y (ee-gree-ay-gah)	Z (seh-tah)

All things in Spanish are either masculine or feminine.

Masculine Nouns

Singular masculine nouns usually end with **-o** and use **el** = the (m).

el libro = the book

el banco = the bank

To make a masculine noun plural, add **-s** and use **los** = the (plural m).

los libros = the books

los bancos = the banks

Not all masculine nouns end with **-o**.

Other masculine nouns end in

-ón **el corazón**

-el **el hotel**

-or **el actor**

-al **el animal**

-ente **el paciente**

If a noun ends in a consonant, add **-es** to make it plural.

el corazón > **los corazones**

el hotel > **los hoteles**

el actor > **los actores**

el animal > **los animales**

el paciente > **los pacientes**

If a noun ends with other letters, you may have to look it up in a dictionary to find the gender.

To say **a** book instead of *the book*, use **un libro**.

un libro = a book

un banco = a bank

To say **some** books instead of *the books*, use **unos libros**.

un libro > **unos libros** (some books)

un banco > **unos bancos** (some banks)

Feminine Nouns

Feminine nouns usually end in **-a** and use the article **la** = the (f).

la mesa = the table

la tienda = the store

To make a feminine noun plural, add **-s** and use the article **las** = the (plural f).

las mesas = the tables

las tiendas = the stores

Not all feminine nouns end with **-a**.

Other feminine nouns end with

-ción **la lección**

-dad **la cantidad**

-tad **la voluntad**

-umbre **la costumbre**

If a noun ends with a consonant, add **-es** to make it plural.

la lección > **las lecciones**

la cantidad > **las cantidades**

la voluntad > **las voluntades**

la costumbre > **las costumbres**

If a noun ends with other letters, you may have to look it up in a dictionary to find the gender.

To say **a** table instead of *the table*, use **una mesa**.

una mesa = a table

una tienda = a store

To say **some** tables instead of *the tables*, use **unas mesas**.

una mesa > **unas mesas** (some tables)

una tienda > **unas tiendas** (some stores)

Noun exercises

singular	plural
<i>el</i> = the (m)	<i>los</i> = the (m)
<i>la</i> = the (f)	<i>las</i> = the (f)
<i>un</i> = a (m)	<i>unos</i> = some (m)
<i>una</i> = a (f)	<i>unas</i> = some (f)

Fill in the blank using the correct form, in Spanish, of *the*, *a*, or *some*. **answers below**

- | | | | | | |
|-----------------|------------|-----------------|----------------|-------------|-----------------|
| 1. the book | <i>el</i> | <i>libro</i> | 11. a chicken | <i>un</i> | <i>pollo</i> |
| the books | <i>los</i> | <i>libros</i> | some chickens | <i>unos</i> | <i>pollos</i> |
| 2. the table | <i>la</i> | <i>mesa</i> | 12. a chair | <i>una</i> | <i>silla</i> |
| the tables | <i>las</i> | <i>mesas</i> | some chairs | <i>unas</i> | <i>sillas</i> |
| 3. the house | | <i>casa</i> | 13. a contract | | <i>contrato</i> |
| the houses | | | some contracts | | |
| 4. the chicken | | <i>pollo</i> | 14. a house | | <i>casa</i> |
| the chickens | | | some houses | | |
| 5. the chair | | <i>silla</i> | 15. a man | | <i>hombre</i> |
| the chairs | | | some men | | |
| 6. the contract | | <i>contrato</i> | 16. a bank | | <i>banco</i> |
| the contracts | | | some banks | | |
| 7. the bill | | <i>cuenta</i> | 17. a letter | | <i>carta</i> |
| the bills | | | some letters | | |
| 8. the gift | | <i>regalo</i> | 18. a friend | | <i>amigo</i> |
| the gifts | | | some friends | | |
| 9. the bathroom | | <i>baño</i> | 19. a beer | | <i>cerveza</i> |
| the bathrooms | | | some beers | | |
| 10. the lesson | | <i>lección</i> | 20. a gift | | <i>regalo</i> |
| the lessons | | | some gifts | | |

Translate into Spanish. For the definitions, refer to the exercise above. **answers below**

- | | | | | | |
|------------------|-------------|---------------|-------------------|--|--|
| 1. a book | <i>un</i> | <i>libro</i> | 11. the lessons | | |
| 2. some chairs | <i>unas</i> | <i>sillas</i> | 12. the contracts | | |
| 3. the lesson | | | 13. some gifts | | |
| 4. some chickens | | | 14. a beer | | |
| 5. some beers | | | 15. a bathroom | | |
| 6. the house | | | 16. some chairs | | |
| 7. a painter | | | 17. the bill | | |
| 8. the contract | | | 18. some books | | |
| 9. the table | | | 19. some houses | | |
| 10. some friends | | | 20. a table | | |



- | | | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. el libro, los libros | 11. un pollo, unos pollos | 1. un libro | 11. las lecciones |
| 2. la mesa, las mesas | 12. una silla, unas sillas | 2. unas sillas | 12. los contratos |
| 3. la casa, las casas | 13. un contrato, unos contratos | 3. la lección | 13. unos regalos |
| 4. el pollo, los pollos | 14. una casa, unas casas | 4. unos pollos | 14. una cerveza |
| 5. la silla, las sillas | 15. un hombre, unos hombres | 5. unas cervezas | 15. un baño |
| 6. el contrato, los contratos | 16. un banco, unos bancos | 6. la casa | 16. unas sillas |
| 7. la cuenta, las cuentas | 17. una carta, unas cartas | 7. un pintor | 17. la cuenta |
| 8. el regalo, los regalos | 18. un amigo, unos amigos | 8. el contrato | 18. unos libros |
| 9. el baño, los baños | 19. una cerveza, unas cervezas | 9. la mesa | 19. unas casas |
| 10. la lección, las lecciones | 20. un regalo, unos regalos | 10. unos amigos | 20. una mesa |

Verbs are the moving parts of the language. You must learn to use verbs spontaneously before you can speak fluidly. This system focuses on verbs and their usage. The infinitive or 'to form' of verbs in Spanish end with -ar, -er, or -ir. You'll learn the most common -ar verbs first.

Memorize the verbs listed below using the memory tips on the next pages to help you. Test yourself by covering the Spanish column and translating to Spanish. Then cover the English and translate to English. Finally, test yourself with the white VerbCards.

-AR verbs

arreglar to fix, arrange
ayudar to help
bailar to dance
bajar to lower, get out (of a vehicle)
buscar to look for

cambiar to change, exchange
caminar to walk
cantar to sing
cerrar to close
cocinar to cook

comprar to buy
contestar to answer
dar to give
dejar (de) to leave behind, (w/ de) quit
descansar to rest

empezar to start
encontrar to find, encounter
escuchar to listen to
esperar to wait (for), hope
estar to be (feelings - location)

estudiar to study
firmar to sign
ganar to earn, win
gastar to spend, waste
hablar to speak

invitar to invite
jugar to play (a sport or game)
lavar to wash
llegar to arrive

llenar to fill
llevar to carry, wear
limpiar to clean
mandar to mail, send
manejar to drive, manage

necesitar to need
ordenar to order
olvidar to forget
pagar to pay
pasar (por) to pass (by), happen, spend (time)

pensar (en) to think (about)
platicar to chat
preguntar to ask, question
preparar to prepare
presentar to introduce

probar to test, taste
quitar to remove (from a surface)
recomendar to recommend
recordar to remember
regresar to return

sacar to take out, take (a photo)
terminar to finish, terminate
tocar to play (an instrument), touch
tomar to drink, take (a mode of transport)
trabajar to work

tratar (de) to try (to)
usar to use
viajar to travel
visitar to visit

-AR verb memory tips



Read each memory tip completely and out loud.
Let the rhythm of the tip register in your mind.

-AR verbs

ARREGLAR = to arrange, fix — Looks like **ARRANGE**.
arreglar = to arrange, fix.

AYUDAR = to help — When you need help — yell, **AH YOU THAR?**
ayudar = to help.

BAILAR = to dance — A **BALLERINA** is a DANCER.
bailar = to dance.

BAJAR = to lower, get out (of a vehicle) — **BAJA** California is LOWER California.
bajar = to lower.

BUSCAR = to look for — Visualize a **BUS-CAR** with lots of people in it, and we are LOOKING FOR that **BUS-CAR**.
buscar = to look for.

CAMBIAR = to change, exchange — He CHANGED from **CAMBRIDGE** to Oxford.
cambiar = to change.

CAMINAR = to walk — The **CAMEL** WALKS across the desert.
caminar = to walk.

CANTAR = to sing — The **CANTINA** is a bar in Mexico where men go to drink and SING.
cantar = to sing.

CERRAR = to close — They CLOSED the door on **SARAH**.
cerrar = to close.

COCINAR = to cook — Looks like **CUISINE**.
cocinar = to cook.

COMPRAR = to buy — **COMPARISON** shopping: we compare before we BUY.
comprar = to buy.

CONTESTAR = to answer — a **CONTESTANT** ANSWERS the questions.
contestar = to answer.

DAR = to give — GIVE your **DARLING** a kiss.
dar = to give.

DEJAR (de) = to leave behind, quit — **DEJA-VU** is an experience you LEFT BEHIND. **Dejar de** is followed by an infinitive and means 'to quit (something).'
dejar = to leave behind. dejar de = to quit

DESCANSAR = to rest — when you REST, you "DE-CANCER" yourself.
descansar = to rest.

EMPEZAR = to start, begin — An **EMPEROR** or a **czar** STARTS a dynasty.
empezar = to start, begin.

ENCONTRAR = to find, encounter — Looks like **ENCOUNTER**.
encontrar = to find.

ESCUCHAR = to listen to — Think of the **ESCHUCIAN** (eustacian) tubes in your EARS.
escuchar = to listen.

ESPERAR = to wait (for), hope — We have to WAIT for **ESPERANTO**, a universal language that we HOPE will make us one world.
esperar = to wait for, hope.

ESTAR = to be (temporary) — Andy Warhol said "everyone will be **A STAR** for 15 minutes."
estar = to be (temporary).

ESTUDIAR = to study — Looks like **STUDY**.
estudiar = to study.

FIRMAR = to sign — We **FIRM** things up with our **SIGNATURE**.
firmar = to sign.

GANAR = to earn, win — Think of **GARNERING** MONEY, or **GAINING** MONEY.
ganar = to earn, win.

GASTAR = to spend, waste — Think of the **GASTLY** amount you SPEND on **GAS** to drive on **TAR**.
gastar = spend, waste.

HABLAR = to speak — **BLAH-BLAH-BLAH**, TALK-TALK-TALK.
hablar = to speak.

INVITAR = to invite — Looks like **INVITE**.
invitar = to invite.

JUGAR = to play (a sport) — Think of **JUGGLING**, a recreational **SPORT**.
jugar = to play a sport or a game.

LAVAR = to wash — Looks like **LAVA** soap and **LAVATORY**, where you **WASH** up.
lavar = to wash.



LLEGAR = to arrive — When ‘**GAR**’ the Olympic runner ARRIVED at the finish line, everyone yelled ‘**YEA GAR!**’
llegar = to arrive.

LLENAR = to fill — **LENA** will FILL the bill.
llenar = to fill.

LLEVAR = to carry, wear — Notice the **V** in the middle. It’s a **VESSEL** to CARRY things.
llevar = to carry.

LIMPIAR = to clean — He **LIMPED** across the CLEAN floor.
limpiar = to clean.

MANDAR = to send, mail — Think of the MAILMAN named **DAR**.
mandar = send, mail.

MANEJAR = to drive, manage — Think of **MANAGING** a CAR down the road.
manejar = to drive, manage.

NECESITAR = to need — Looks like **NECESSITY**.
necesitar = to need.

ORDENAR = to order — Looks like **ORDER**.
ordenar = to order.

OLVIDAR = to forget — **OBLIVION** is the state of total FORGETFULNESS.
olvidar = to forget.

PAGAR = to pay — Looks like **PAY**.
pagar = to pay.

PASAR (por) = to pass (by), happen, spend time — Looks like **PASS**.
pasar = to pass (by), happen, or spend time.

PENSAR (en) = to think (about) — To be in a **PENSIVE** mood is to be in a THOUGHTFUL mood.
pensar (en) = to think (about).

PLATICAR = to chat — People who CHAT too much are often full of **PLATITUDES**.
platicar = to chat.

PREGUNTAR = to ask a question — She ASKED “Why am I **PREGNANT?**”
preguntar = to ask a question.

PREPARAR = to prepare — Looks like **PREPARE**.
preparar = to prepare.

PRESENTAR = to introduce — When you INTRODUCE someone, you **PRESENT** them to another person. presentar = to introduce.

PROBAR = to test, taste — When you are on **PROBATION**, your behavior is being TESTED.
probar = to test, taste.

QUITAR = to remove — when you **QUIT** a job you REMOVE yourself from it.
quitar = to remove.

RECORDAR = to remember — To **RECORD** something in your mind is to REMEMBER it.
recordar = to remember.

RECOMENDAR = to recommend — Looks like **RECOMMEND**.
recomendar = recommend.

REGRESAR = to return — Looks like **REGRESS**.
regresar = to return.

SACAR = to take out, take (a photo) — TAKE it out of the **SACK**.
sacar = take out, take (a photo).

TERMINAR = to finish, terminate, end — Looks like **TERMINATE**.
terminar = to finish, terminate, end.

TOCAR = to play (an instrument), touch — Looks like **TOUCH**.
tocar = to play, touch.

TOMAR = to drink, take (a mode of transportation) — Think of DRINKING **TOMATO JUICE** or a **TOM COLLINS**.
tomar = to drink.

TRABAJAR = to work — He **WORKS** as a **TROUBADOUR**. trabajar = to work.

TRATAR (de) = to try (to) — Looks like **TRY-TRY**.
Tratar de is followed by an infinitive and means to try (something).
tratar = to try (to).

USAR = to use — Looks like **USE**.
usar = use.

VIAJAR = to travel — We plan to TRAVEL **VIA** train, or **VIA** México City.
viajar = to travel.

VISITAR = to visit — Looks like **VISIT**.
visitar = to visit.

'T' and 'you' (formal)

In English we use the subject Pronouns (I, you, he, she, etc.) with the verb to indicate who is doing something, i.e. I need, you need.

In Spanish (even though these subject pronouns exist) the verb endings indicate the people.

- To say "I need" start with the infinitive:
to need = *necesitar*.
- Drop the -ar ending and add "-o" to the stem.
necesitar = *necesit_* = *necesito* = I need.
It is the "-o" that indicates, "I."
- To say "you need" (formal) we drop the -ar ending and add "-a"
necesitar = *necesit_* = *necesita* = you need.
It is the "-a" that indicates "you."

Spanish has two **you's**, just like in English where we have the
"you" = **you formal**
and
"thou" = **you informal**.

In English the "**thou**" form has become obsolete in daily life. However, in Spanish, both formal and personal forms are used. It is important to use them appropriately.

You usually won't offend people if you use the wrong "you." Spanish-speakers are very forgiving and usually appreciate the fact that you are trying to speak their language. If you don't know a person, it is usually better to use the "you formal" to show respect.

Women should use caution **NOT** to use the **personal you** (*tú*), with a man until she develops confidence in him. A man may misinterpret the use of *the personal you* as an invitation to intimacy. If a man is using the personal you (*tú*)

to need	
I need	we need
you (<i>tú</i>) need	
he, she, you (<i>Ud.</i>) need	they need

In the beginning we will only learn the "you formal" and "I" forms of the verb because these are used most often. Notice their position in the verb tree diagram above. They are set in black.

Turn to page 19. Look at the verb tree diagram in the top left corner with all the forms of *necesitar*. Notice that the black form is *necesito*. This is the form we are working with on this page.

Notice the verb tree diagram on page 89. All the forms are black, indicating that we will then be working with all forms. Before you begin any page, look at the verb tree diagram. Notice the form you will be working with and visually lock the image of the whole diagram into your mind. Our goal is to know all these forms perfectly.

YOU formal (*Usted*) vs. You personal (*tú*)

THE FORMAL YOU (*USTED*) IS USED WITH:

1. people whom you don't know or whom you don't call by their first name.
2. people who are in authority over you, or to whom you wish to show respect.
3. people who are older than you.
4. people with whom you have no level of intimacy or confidence.

THE PERSONAL YOU (*TÚ*) IS USED WITH:

1. people with whom you are on a first-name basis.
2. people with whom you are on equal terms.
3. people who are younger than you.
4. people with whom you have a level of intimacy or confidence.

with a woman inappropriately, she can simply say, *Usted, por favor*, and he will get the idea.

In this course we will learn the FORMAL YOU (*usted*) first. From now on, until Section V, Conjugation, all references to "you" will be to the formal form.

You probably won't be on first-name basis with most people, so the **formal you** will be more appropriate most of the time.

Now let's look at the Power Verbs.

POWER VERBS are verbs that you can conjugate and then add on the infinitive of another verb to make a sentence. For example: I NEED to eat, or I NEED to drink.

Again, use **the power verb**, then **add an infinitive**.

power verb	+ infinitive	power verb	+ infinitive	
I NEED	to eat.	=	NECESITO	comer.
I WANT	to drink.	=	QUIERO	tomar.
I'M GOING	to speak.	=	VOY A	hablar.
I CAN	dance.	=	PUEDO	bailar.
I LIKE	to work.	=	ME GUSTA	trabajar.
I HAVE	to order	=	TENGO QUE	ordenar.

Here are the POWER VERBS in the 'I' and 'you' forms and then an example of a power verb sentence.

Look these over and then go on to the learning steps. Refer to pages 133 and 134, for a complete conjugation of these verbs.

NECESITAR - TO NEED

necesito _____ I need _____

Necesito ordenar. I need to order.

necesita _____ You need _____

Necesita pagar. You need to pay.

QUERER - TO WANT

quiero _____ I want _____

Quiero ordenar. I want to order.

quiere _____ You want _____

Quiere pagar. You want to pay.

IR - TO GO

voy a _____ I am going _____

Voy a ordenar. I am going to order.

va a _____ You are going _____

Va a pagar. You are going to pay.

PODER - TO BE ABLE (CAN)

puedo _____ I can _____

Puedo ordenar. I can order.

puede _____ You can _____

Puede pagar. You can pay.

GUSTAR - TO BE PLEASING (I LIKE, ETC.)

me gusta _____ I like _____

Me gusta ordenar. I like to order.

le gusta _____ You like _____

Le gusta pagar. You like to pay.

TENER QUE - TO HAVE TO

tengo que _____ I have to _____

Tengo que ordenar. I have to order.

tiene que _____ You have to _____

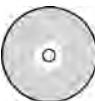
Tiene que pagar. You have to pay.

Time frames



Time words identify when a particular action takes place.

While reading these pages, listen to the CD/cassette to hear and repeat these words.



ayer	yesterday
hoy	today
mañana	tomorrow
pasado mañana	day after tomorrow

esta mañana	this morning
esta tarde	this afternoon
esta noche	this evening, tonight
esta semana	this week
este mes	this month
este año	this year
este lunes*	this Monday
este verano*	this summer
este fin de semana	this weekend

una hora	an hour
cada día	each day
cada mañana	each morning
cada tarde	each afternoon
cada noche	each night
cada semana	each week

temprano	early
a tiempo	on time
tarde	late
más tarde	later

antes (de)	before
durante	during
después (de)	after

ya	already, this instant
ahora, ahorita	now, right away
cuanto antes	as soon as possible
pronto	soon

el desayuno	breakfast
la comida	lunch
la cena	dinner

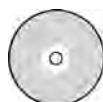
la próxima semana	next week
el próximo mes	next month
el próximo año	next year
el próximo lunes	next Monday*
el próximo verano	next summer*

mañana en la mañana	tomorrow (in the) morning
mañana en la tarde	tomorrow (in the) afternoon
mañana en la noche	tomorrow (in the) night

nunca	never
una vez, otra vez	once, again
frecuentemente	frequently
siempre	always

todavía no	not yet
todavía	still
entonces	then

* select days of the week and seasons, see page 4.



Glue words are the little words that glue nouns and verbs together.

While reading these pages, listen to the CD/cassette to hear and repeat these words.

qué	what
cuándo	when
dónde	where
adónde	(to) where
cómo	how
quién	who
a quién	(to) whom
por qué	why
cuánto	how much
cuál	which
y	and
o	or
pero	but
porque	because
si	if
a	to
con	with
sin	without
de	of, from, about
en	in, on, at
sobre	on, about
por <small>(in exchange)</small>	for, by, through
para <small>(intended)</small>	for, in order to

un poco (de)	a little (of)
suficiente	enough
demasiado	too much

este, esta	this <small>(m, f)</small>
estos, estas	these <small>(m, f)</small>
ese, esa	that <small>(m, f)</small>
esos, esas	those <small>(m, f)</small>

aquí	here
allí	there

más	more
menos	less

todo/a	all <small>(m, f)</small>
nada	nothing
nadie	no one
casi	almost

mi-s	my
tu-s	your <small>(personal)</small>
su-s	your <small>(formal)</small> , his, her, their
nuestro/a-s	our

conmigo with me
con usted, contigo with you (formal, personal)
con él, con ella with him, with her
con nosotros with us
con ellos, con ellas, con Uds. with them (m, f), ...you all

Creating sentences

Now you are going to learn to make sentences by combining Power Verbs with the verb infinitives that you have memorized. You will also add nouns and time frames. Here is an example of how these sentences will be formed. Notice how easy it is.

POWER VERB	INFINITIVE	NOUN PHRASE	TIME FRAME
I need <i>Necesito</i>	to drink <i>tomar</i>	coffee <i>café</i>	in the morning. <i>en la mañana.</i>
I want <i>Quiero</i>	to study <i>estudiar</i>	Spanish <i>español</i>	every day. <i>cada día.</i>
I can <i>Puedo</i>	(to) order <i>ordenar</i>	dessert <i>el postre</i>	now. <i>ahora.</i>
I'm going <i>Voy a</i>	to pay <i>pagar</i>	the bill <i>la cuenta</i>	later. <i>más tarde.</i>
I have <i>Tengo que</i>	to cook <i>cocinar</i>	dinner <i>la cena</i>	tonight. <i>esta noche.</i>
I like <i>Me gusta</i>	to finish <i>terminar</i>	my work <i>mi trabajo</i>	early. <i>temprano.</i>

LET'S REVIEW:

POWER VERBS are verbs to which infinitives can be added, i.e., **I need to eat, I want to eat, I can eat, I'm going to eat, I like to eat, I have to eat.**

Refer to the list of verbs on page 140 for the most common infinitives. These are the one hundred verbs in your VerbCard packet.

NOUNS are things and are *masculine* or *feminine*, *singular* or *plural*. As you do the following pages, you will develop a basic noun vocabulary.

TIME FRAMES are phrases that describe the time when a particular action takes place. Refer to page 14 as you do the exercises.

GLUE WORDS connect nouns and verbs. Refer to page 15 as you do the exercises.

Now let's make sentences.

Section III

POWER VERB EXERCISES

‘I’ and ‘You’ (formal)

Vocabulary preparation



P

This is the vocabulary that will be used in the following section.
Study it, highlight difficult words, then do the exercises on the next pages.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|----------------------------|------------------|
| 1. necesito | I need | 29. la cuenta | the bill |
| 2. necesita | you need | 30. a mi /su amigo | my/your friend |
| 3. hablar | to speak | 31. tenis | tennis |
| 4. estudiar | to study | 32. mi/su coche | my/your car |
| 5. sacar | to take (a photo) | 33. la carta | the letter |
| 6. pagar | to pay | 34. uno, -a | one |
| 7. invitar | to invite | 35. el baño | the bathroom |
| 8. trabajar | to work | 36. mi dinero | my money |
| 9. viajar | to travel | 37. más agua | more water |
| 10. jugar | to play (a sport) | 38. una cerveza fría | a cold beer |
| 11. lavar | to wash | 39. un regalo | a gift |
| 12. contestar | to answer | 40. un banco | a bank |
| 13. usar | to use | 41. a México | to Mexico |
| 14. mandar | to send | 42. un recuerdo | a souvenir |
| 15. comprar | to buy | 43. la puerta | the door |
| 16. buscar | to look for | 44. un autobús | a bus |
| 17. cambiar | to change | 45. mi/su tanque | my/your tank |
| 18. tomar | to drink | 46. mi/su maleta | my/your suitcase |
| 19. firmar | to sign | 47. mucho | a lot |
| 20. ordenar | to order | 48. hoy | today |
| 21. terminar | to finish | 49. mañana | tomorrow |
| 22. regresar | to return | 50. pronto | soon |
| 23. llegar | to arrive | 51. esta noche | tonight |
| 24. descansar | to rest | 52. ahora | now |
| 25. empezar | to begin | 53. ¿qué | What ...? |
| 26. manejar | to drive | 54. ¿cuándo | When ...? |
| 27. español | Spanish | 55. ¿adónde | (To) where ...? |
| 28. una foto | a photo | | |

necesar	
necesito	necesitamos
necesitas	
necesita	necesitan

Look at the verb tree diagram above. Note that **necesito** ends with an **o**, indicating 'I need.'

One (m) = uno One (f) = una

(see #12,13)

Necesito mandar una. I need to mail one (f).

Necesito comprar uno. I need to buy one (m).

The personal 'A' (see #5)

'A' always precedes a person when the person is the object of a verb.

Necesito invitar a Juan. = I need to invite Juan.

Necesito visitar a mi amigo. = I need to visit my friend.

Refer to page 34 for further explanation.



Write the complete answer, including the words in small print.

Refer to the Vocabulary Preparation for the verbs.

answers on page 22

1. I need to speak Spanish. Necesito hablar español. español
2. I need to study a lot. _____ mucho
3. I need to take a photo. _____ una foto
4. I need to pay the bill. _____ la cuenta
5. I need to invite my friend. _____ a mi amigo
6. I need to work a lot today. _____ mucho
7. I need to travel more. _____ más
8. I need to play more tennis. _____ más tenis
9. I need to wash my car. _____ mi coche
10. I need to answer the letter. _____ la carta
11. I need to use the bathroom. _____ el baño
12. I need to mail one (f). _____
13. I need to buy one (m). _____
14. I need to look for one (m). _____
15. I need to exchange my money. _____ mi dinero
16. I need to drink more water. _____ más agua
17. I need to sign the bill. _____ la cuenta
18. I need to order a cold beer. _____ una cerveza fría
19. I need to finish today. _____ hoy
20. I need to return tomorrow. _____ mañana
21. I need to arrive soon. _____ pronto
22. I need to rest tonight. _____ esta noche
23. I need to begin today. _____ hoy
24. I need to drive to Mexico. _____ a México

Do you need? = ¿Necesita?

necesitar	
necesito	necesitamos
necesitas	
necesita	necesitan

Note that **necesita** ends with an **a**, indicating ‘**you** need’ (*formal*).

This is the ‘formal you.’ See page 12 for an explanation of the ‘personal you’ and the ‘formal you.’

To ask a question

Simply change the inflection in speaking.

The *do* or *does* that is used in English questions is incorporated in the verb in Spanish.

Necesita comer. = You need to eat. *¿Necesita comer?* = Do you need to eat?

In written Spanish, an upside-down question mark (¿) is used at the beginning of a question.

Don’t forget to put it in when you write your answers.



Write the complete answer, including the words in small print.

answers on page 22

1. Do you need to speak Spanish? ¿Necesita hablar español?
2. Do you need to study a lot? _____ mucho
3. Do you need to take a photo? _____ una foto
4. Do you need to pay the bill? _____ la cuenta
5. Do you need to invite your friend? _____ a su amigo
6. Do you need to work a lot today? _____ mucho hoy
7. Do you need to travel more? _____ más
8. Do you need to play more tennis? _____ más tenis
9. Do you need to wash your car? _____ su coche
10. Do you need to answer the letter? _____ la carta
11. Do you need to use the bathroom? _____ usar el baño
12. Do you need to mail a letter? _____ una carta
13. Do you need to buy a gift? _____ un regalo
14. Do you need to look for a bank? _____ un banco
15. What do you need to exchange? _____ ¿Qué
16. What do you need to drink? _____
17. What do you need to sign? _____
18. What do you need to order? _____
19. When do you need to finish? _____ ¿Cuándo
20. When do you need to return? _____
21. When do you need to arrive? _____
22. When do you need to rest? _____
23. When do you need to begin? _____
24. To where do you need to drive? _____ ¿Adónde

necesito	necesitamos
necesitas	
necesita	necesitan

Negative answer

To answer in the negative

You need two *no*'s. The first *no* answers the question, (No...) The second *no* makes the verb negative (...don't) and goes before the verb.

*¿Necesita estudiar? = Do you need to study?
No, no necesito estudiar. = No, I don't need to study.*



answers below

1. Do you need to buy a souvenir? ¿Necesita comprar un recuerdo?
No, I don't need to buy one. No, no necesito comprar uno.
 2. Do you need to close the door? _____ la puerta
No, I don't need to close the door. _____
 3. Do you need to work tonight? _____ esta noche
No, I don't need to work tonight. _____
 4. Do you need to wait for a bus? _____ un autobús
No, I don't need to wait for one. _____
 5. Do you need to rest now? _____ ahora
No, I don't need to rest now. _____
 6. Do you need to use the bathroom? _____ el baño
No, I don't need to use the bathroom. _____

Now answer in the positive by using 'Sí...' in the answer and then in the negative, by using 'No, no...'

1. ¿Necesita hablar español aquí? Sí, necesito hablar español aquí.
(negative) No, no necesito hablar español aquí.
 2. ¿Necesita llenar su tanque? Sí, _____ mi tanque
(negative) No, no _____
 3. ¿Necesita llevar su maleta? Sí, _____ mi maleta
(negative) No, no _____
 4. ¿Necesita estar aquí mañana? Sí, _____
(negative) No, no _____



- | | |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. ¿Necesita comprar un recuerdo?2. ¿Necesita cerrar la puerta?3. ¿Necesita trabajar esta noche?4. ¿Necesita esperar un autobús?5. ¿Necesita descansar ahora?6. ¿Necesita usar el baño? | <p>No, no necesito comprar uno.</p> <p>No, no necesito cerrar la puerta.</p> <p>No, no necesito trabajar esta noche.</p> <p>No, no necesito esperar uno.</p> <p>No, no necesito descansar ahora.</p> <p>No, no necesito usar el baño.</p> |
|--|---|

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. ¿Necesita hablar español aquí? | Sí, necesito hablar español aquí. | No, no necesito hablar español aquí. |
| 2. ¿Necesita llenar su tanque? | Sí, necesito llenar mi tanque. | No, no necesito llenar mi tanque. |
| 3. ¿Necesita llevar su maleta? | Sí, necesito llevar mi maleta. | No, no necesito llevar mi maleta. |
| 4. ¿Necesita estar aquí mañana? | Sí, necesito estar aquí mañana. | No, no necesito estar aquí mañana. |

¿Necesita? - Necesito



Disc 1 track 8
Cassette 1 side A



THESE ARE THE 5-POINT
QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS
ON YOUR GREEN CARDS

Use the questions and answers as a spoken exercise.
Answer with *sí* or *no* as appropriate.
Work with the recording, a partner, or alone.
Focus on your pronunciation.

A

for page 20

for page 19

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|--|
| 1. ¿Necesita hablar español? | Sí ... No, no ... | 1. Necesito hablar español. |
| 2. ¿Necesita estudiar mucho? | Sí ... No, no ... | 2. Necesito estudiar mucho. |
| 3. ¿Necesita sacar una foto? | Sí ... No, no ... | 3. Necesito sacar una foto. |
| 4. ¿Necesita pagar la cuenta? | Sí ... No, no ... | 4. Necesito pagar la cuenta. |
| 5. ¿Necesita invitar a su amigo? | Sí ... No, no ... | 5. Necesito invitar a mi amigo. |
| 6. ¿Necesita trabajar mucho hoy? | Sí ... No, no ... | 6. Necesito trabajar mucho hoy. |
| 7. ¿Necesita viajar más? | Sí ... No, no ... | 7. Necesito viajar más. |
| 8. ¿Necesita jugar más tenis? | Sí ... No, no ... | 8. Necesito jugar más tenis. |
| 9. ¿Necesita lavar su coche? | Sí ... No, no ... | 9. Necesito lavar mi coche. |
| 10. ¿Necesita contestar la carta? | Sí ... No, no ... | 10. Necesito contestar la carta. |
| 11. ¿Necesita usar el baño? | Sí ... No, no ... | 11. Necesito usar el baño. |
| 12. ¿Necesita mandar una carta? | Sí ... No, no ... | 12. Necesito mandar una. |
| 13. ¿Necesita comprar un regalo? | Sí ... No, no ... | 13. Necesito comprar uno. |
| 14. ¿Necesita buscar un banco? | <u>Sí ... No, no ...</u> | 14. Necesito buscar uno. |
| 15. ¿Qué necesita cambiar? | | 15. Necesito cambiar mi dinero. |
| 16. ¿Qué necesita tomar? | | 16. Necesito tomar más agua. |
| 17. ¿Qué necesita firmar? | | 17. Necesito firmar la cuenta. |
| 18. ¿Qué necesita ordenar? | | 18. Necesito ordenar una cerveza fría. |
| 19. ¿Cuándo necesita terminar? | | 19. Necesito terminar hoy. |
| 20. ¿Cuándo necesita regresar? | | 20. Necesito regresar mañana. |
| 21. ¿Cuándo necesita llegar? | | 21. Necesito llegar pronto. |
| 22. ¿Cuándo necesita descansar? | | 22. Necesito descansar esta noche. |
| 23. ¿Cuándo necesita empezar? | | 23. Necesito empezar hoy. |
| 24. ¿Adónde necesita manejar? | | 24. Necesito manejar a México. |



This is the English version of the questions and answers on the preceding page.
Translate them into Spanish orally until you can do it easily.
Highlight the words that give you problems.

ES

answers on previous page

- | | | |
|---------------------------------------|------------------|--|
| 1. Do you need to speak Spanish? | Yes, ... No, ... | 1. I (don't) need to speak Spanish. |
| 2. Do you need to study a lot? | Yes, ... No, ... | 2. I (don't) need to study a lot. |
| 3. Do you need to take a photo? | Yes, ... No, ... | 3. I (don't) need to take a photo. |
| 4. Do you need to pay the bill? | Yes, ... No, ... | 4. I (don't) need to pay the bill. |
| 5. Do you need to invite your friend? | Yes, ... No, ... | 5. I (don't) need to invite my friend. |
| 6. Do you need to work a lot today? | Yes, ... No, ... | 6. I (don't) need to work a lot today. |
| 7. Do you need to travel more? | Yes, ... No, ... | 7. I (don't) need to travel more. |
| 8. Do you need to play more tennis? | Yes, ... No, ... | 8. I (don't) need to play more tennis. |
| 9. Do you need to wash your car? | Yes, ... No, ... | 9. I (don't) need to wash my car. |
| 10. Do you need to answer the letter? | Yes, ... No, ... | 10. I (don't) need to answer the letter. |
| 11. Do you need to use the bathroom? | Yes, ... No, ... | 11. I (don't) need to use the bathroom. |
| 12. Do you need to mail a letter? | Yes, ... No, ... | 12. I (don't) need to mail one (<i>f</i>). |
| 13. Do you need to buy a gift? | Yes, ... No, ... | 13. I (don't) need to buy one (<i>m</i>). |
| 14. Do you need to look for a bank? | Yes, ... No, ... | 14. I (don't) need to look for one (<i>m</i>). |
| 15. What do you need to exchange? | | 15. I need to exchange my money. |
| 16. What do you need to drink? | | 16. I need to drink more water. |
| 17. What do you need to sign? | | 17. I need to sign the bill. |
| 18. What do you need to order? | | 18. I need to order a cold beer. |
| 19. When do you need to finish? | | 19. I need to finish today |
| 20. When do you need to return? | | 20. I need to return tomorrow. |
| 21. When do you need to arrive? | | 21. I need to arrive soon. |
| 22. When do you need to rest? | | 22. I need to rest tonight. |
| 23. When do you need to begin? | | 23. I need to begin today. |
| 24. To where do you need to drive? | | 24. I need to drive to Mexico. |

Vocabulary quiz



Quiz yourself on the vocabulary you just studied. **answers on page 18**



55 possible

- wrong

 total score

If you got 44 correct, congratulations!
Retest yourself on the items you missed.

1. I need _____
2. you need _____
3. to speak _____
4. to study _____
5. to take (a photo) _____
6. to pay _____
7. to invite _____
8. to work _____
9. to travel _____
10. to play (a sport) _____
11. to wash _____
12. to answer _____
13. to use _____
14. to send _____
15. to buy _____
16. to look for _____
17. to change _____
18. to drink _____
19. to sign _____
20. to order _____
21. to finish _____
22. to return _____
23. to arrive _____
24. to rest _____
25. to begin _____
26. to drive _____

27. Spanish _____
28. a photo _____
29. the bill _____
30. my/your friend _____
31. more tennis _____
32. my/your car _____
33. one _____
34. the letter _____
35. the bathroom _____
36. my money _____
37. more water _____
38. a cold beer _____
39. a gift _____
40. a bank _____
41. to Mexico _____
42. a souvenir _____
43. the door _____
44. a bus _____
45. my/your tank _____
46. my/your suitcase _____

47. a lot _____
48. today _____
49. tomorrow _____
50. soon _____
51. tonight _____
52. now _____

53. What ...? _____
54. When ...? _____
55. (To) where ...? _____


P

This is the vocabulary that will be used in the following section.
Study it, highlight difficult words, then do the exercises on the next pages.

- | | | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. quiero | I want | 29. agua purificada | purified water |
| 2. quiere | you want | 30. la guitarra | the guitar |
| 3. comprar | to buy | 31. mi/su casa | my/your house |
| 4. encontrar | to find | 32. mi/su amigo | my/your friend |
| 5. escuchar | to listen | 33. un banco | a bank |
| 6. gastar | to spend | 34. la música | the music |
| 7. llenar | to fill | 35. el tanque | the tank |
| 8. limpiar | to clean | 36. la cocina | the kitchen |
| 9. preparar | to prepare | 37. la cena | the dinner |
| 10. caminar | to walk | 38. una canción | a song |
| 11. cantar | to sing | 39. la puerta | the door |
| 12. cerrar | to close | 40. la pregunta | the question |
| 13. cocinar | to cook | 41. el pastel | the cake |
| 14. contestar | to answer | 42. el instrumento | the instrument |
| 15. empezar | to start | 43. la cuenta | the bill |
| 16. ganar | to earn | 44. la maleta | the suitcase |
| 17. tomar | to take (mode of transportation) | 45. con Usted | with you |
| 18. probar | to taste | 46. mañana | tomorrow |
| 19. tomar | to drink | 47. ahora | now |
| 20. tocar | to play (instrument) | 48. más tarde | later |
| 21. bailar | to dance | 49. aquí | here |
| 22. pasar | to pass by | 50. conmigo | with me |
| 23. presentar | to introduce | 51. esta noche | tonight |
| 24. firmar | to sign | 52. ¿qué | what ...? |
| 25. dejar | to leave | 53. ¿cuál | which ...? |
| 26. viajar | to travel | 54. ¿cuándo | when ...? |
| 27. (mucho/más) dinero | (a lot of/more) money | 55. ¿adónde | (to) where ...? |
| 28. un taxi | a taxi | | |

Do you want? = ¿Quiere?

querer	
quiero	queremos
quieres	
quiere	quieren

Note that **quiere** ends with an **e**, indicating 'you want' (*formal*).

Meals (see #7)

The three main meals are: *el desayuno* = breakfast (usually before 10 A.M.)
la comida = lunch (usually between 2 P.M. and 4 P.M.)
la cena = dinner (usually after 8 P.M.)



I love you

Te quiero = I love you.

The meals always use the article *el* or *la*. But the article has no meaning.



answers on page 28

1. Do you want to listen to the music? ¿Quiere escuchar la música? _____ la música
2. Do you want to buy a gift? _____
3. Do you want to find a bank? _____ un banco
4. Do you want to spend the money? _____ el dinero
5. Do you want to fill the tank? _____ el tanque
6. Do you want to clean the kitchen? _____ la cocina
7. Do you want to prepare the food? _____ la comida
8. Do you want to walk with me? _____ conmigo
9. Do you want to sing a song? _____ una canción
10. Do you want to close the door? _____ la puerta
11. Do you want to cook tonight? _____ esta noche
12. Do you want to answer the question? _____ la pregunta
13. Do you want to start today? _____
14. Do you want to earn a lot of money? _____ mucho dinero
15. Do you want to take a taxi? _____
16. Do you want to taste the cake? _____ el pastel
17. What do you want to drink? _____ ¿Qué
18. Which instrument do you want to play? _____ ¿Cuál instrumento
19. When do you want to dance? _____ Cuándo
20. When do you want to pass by my house? _____ mi casa
21. When do you want to introduce your friend? _____ a su amigo
22. When do you want to sign the bill? _____ la cuenta
23. Where do you want to leave the suitcase? _____ la maleta
24. To where do you want to travel? _____ ¿Adónde

querer	
quiero	queremos
quieres	
quiere	quieren

Note that **quiero** ends with an **o**, indicating 'I want.'

Pronunciation of *qui*

Note that **quiero** starts with **qui-**, which is pronounced like the English word 'key.'

The pronunciation of *quiero* is 'key-air-o.'

To say 'IT,' add *LO* or *LA* to the infinitive

If the thing referred to is masculine (*el libro*), 'it' = ***lo***
Quiero comprarlo. = I want to buy it (m)

If the thing referred to is feminine (*la mesa*), 'it' = ***la***
Quiero pagarla. = I want to pay for it (f)



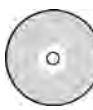
Remember ***lo*** = it (m) and ***la*** = it (f). Add the ***lo*** and ***la*** to the infinitive.
answers on page 28

1. I want to listen to it (f). *Quiero escucharla.*
2. I want to buy one (m). _____
3. I want to find one (m). _____
4. I want to spend it (m). _____
5. I want to fill it (m). _____
6. I want to clean it (f). _____
7. I don't want to prepare it (f). _____
8. I want to walk with you. _____ con Usted
9. I don't want to sing one (f). _____
10. I want to close it (f). _____
11. I don't want to cook tonight. _____
12. I want to answer it (f). _____
13. I want to start today. _____
14. I want to earn a lot of money. _____ mucho dinero
15. I want to take a taxi. _____ un taxi
16. I want to taste it (m). _____
17. I want to drink purified water. _____ agua purificada
18. I want to play the guitar. _____ la guitarra
19. I want to dance tonight. _____
20. I want to pass by your house tomorrow. _____ su casa mañana
21. I want to introduce my friend now. _____ a mi amigo ahora
22. I want to sign it (f) later. _____ más tarde
23. I want to leave it (f) here. _____ aqui
24. I want to travel to Mexico. _____

¿Quiere? - Quiero



Disc 1 track 9
Cassette 1 side A



THESE ARE THE 5-POINT
QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS
ON YOUR YELLOW CARDS



Use the questions and answers as a spoken exercise.
Answer with *sí* or *no* as appropriate.
Work with the recording, a partner, or alone.
Focus on your pronunciation.

Look carefully. '-rio' = '-RLO'
The '-rio' may look like '-rio'



for page 26

for page 27

- | | | |
|--|-------------------|--|
| 1. ¿Quiere escuchar la música? | Sí ... No, no ... | 1. Quiero escucharla. |
| 2. ¿Quiere comprar un regalo? | Sí ... No, no ... | 2. Quiero comprar uno. |
| 3. ¿Quiere encontrar un banco? | Sí ... No, no ... | 3. Quiero encontrar uno. |
| 4. ¿Quiere gastar el dinero? | Sí ... No, no ... | 4. Quiero gastarlo. |
| 5. ¿Quiere llenar el tanque? | Sí ... No, no ... | 5. Quiero llenarlo. |
| 6. ¿Quiere limpiar la cocina? | Sí ... No, no ... | 6. Quiero limpiarla. |
| 7. ¿Quiere preparar la comida? | Sí ... No, no ... | 7. Quiero prepararla. |
| 8. ¿Quiere caminar conmigo? | Sí ... No, no ... | 8. Quiero caminar con usted. |
| 9. ¿Quiere cantar una canción? | Sí ... No, no ... | 9. Quiero cantar una. |
| 10. ¿Quiere cerrar la puerta? | Sí ... No, no ... | 10. Quiero cerrarla. |
| 11. ¿Quiere cocinar esta noche? | Sí ... No, no ... | 11. Quiero cocinar esta noche. |
| 12. ¿Quiere contestar la pregunta? | Sí ... No, no ... | 12. Quiero contestarla. |
| 13. ¿Quiere empezar hoy? | Sí ... No, no ... | 13. Quiero empezar hoy. |
| 14. ¿Quiere ganar mucho dinero? | Sí ... No, no ... | 14. Quiero ganar mucho dinero. |
| 15. ¿Quiere tomar un taxi? | Sí ... No, no ... | 15. Quiero tomar uno. |
| 16. ¿Quiere probar el pastel? | Sí ... No, no ... | 16. Quiero probarlo. |
| 17. ¿Qué quiere tomar? | | 17. Quiero tomar agua purificada. |
| 18. ¿Cuál instrumento quiere tocar? | | 18. Quiero tocar la guitarra. |
| 19. ¿Cuándo quiere bailar? | | 19. Quiero bailar esta noche. |
| 20. ¿Cuándo quiere pasar por mi casa? | | 20. Quiero pasar por su casa mañana. |
| 21. ¿Cuándo quiere presentar a su amigo? | | 21. Quiero presentar a mi amigo ahora. |
| 22. ¿Cuándo quiere firmar la cuenta? | | 22. Quiero firmarla más tarde. |
| 23. ¿Dónde quiere dejar la maleta? | | 23. Quiero dejarla aquí. |
| 24. ¿Adónde quiere viajar? | | 24. Quiero viajar a México. |

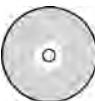


This is the English version of the questions and answers on the preceding page. Translate them into Spanish orally until you can do it easily. Highlight the words that give you problems.



answers on previous page

- | | | |
|--|----------------|---|
| 1. Do you want to listen to the music? | Yes ... No ... | 1. I (don't) want to listen to it (<i>f</i>). |
| 2. Do you want to buy a gift? | Yes ... No ... | 2. I (don't) want to buy one (<i>m</i>). |
| 3. Do you want to find a bank? | Yes ... No ... | 3. I (don't) want to find one (<i>m</i>). |
| 4. Do you want to spend the money? | Yes ... No ... | 4. I (don't) want to spend it (<i>m</i>). |
| 5. Do you want to fill the tank? | Yes ... No ... | 5. I (don't) want to fill it (<i>m</i>). |
| 6. Do you want to clean the kitchen? | Yes ... No ... | 6. I (don't) want to clean it (<i>f</i>). |
| 7. Do you want to prepare the food? | Yes ... No ... | 7. I (don't) want to prepare it (<i>f</i>). |
| 8. Do you want to walk with me? | Yes ... No ... | 8. I (don't) want to walk with you. |
| 9. Do you want to sing a song? | Yes ... No ... | 9. I (don't) want to sing one (<i>f</i>). |
| 10. Do you want to close the door? | Yes ... No ... | 10. I (don't) want to close it (<i>f</i>). |
| 11. Do you want to cook tonight? | Yes ... No ... | 11. I (don't) want to cook tonight. |
| 12. Do you want to answer the question? | Yes ... No ... | 12. I (don't) want to answer it (<i>f</i>). |
| 13. Do you want to start today? | Yes ... No ... | 13. I (don't) want to start today. |
| 14. Do you want to earn a lot of money? | Yes ... No ... | 14. I (don't) want to earn a lot of money. |
| 15. Do you want to take a taxi? | Yes ... No ... | 15. I (don't) want to take one (<i>m</i>). |
| 16. Do you want to taste the cake? | Yes ... No ... | 16. I (don't) want to taste it (<i>m</i>). |
| 17. What do you want to drink? | | 17. I want to drink purified water. |
| 18. Which instrument you want to play? | | 18. I want to play the guitar. |
| 19. When do you want to dance? | | 19. I want to dance tonight. |
| 20. When do you want to pass by my house? | | 20. I want to pass by your house tomorrow. |
| 21. When do you want to introduce your friend? | | 21. I want to introduce my friend now. |
| 22. When do you want to sign the bill? | | 22. I want to sign it (<i>f</i>) later. |
| 23. Where do you want to leave the suitcase? | | 23. I want to leave it (<i>f</i>) here. |
| 24. To where do you want to travel? | | 24. I want to travel to México. |



Now you will learn some -er and -ir verbs. Memorize the verbs listed below. Read the memory tips on the next page to help you with the memorization.

Test yourself by covering first the English column and translating from Spanish to English. Then cover the Spanish column and translate from English to Spanish.



Then use the blue and pink Verbcards and make a 'know' and a 'don't know' pile. Go through the cards until your 'don't know' pile disappears.

-ER and -IR verbs

abrir	to open	mover	to move (something)
aprender	to learn	oír	to hear
comer	to eat	pedir	to ask for
conocer	to know, meet (first time)	perder	to lose
conseguir	to get, obtain	poner	to put
correr	to run, flow	recibir	to receive
creer	to believe	saber	to know (information)
decidir	to decide	salir	to leave, go out
decir	to say, tell	seguir	to follow
dormir	to sleep	ser	to be (permanent)
entender	to understand	subir	to go up, get into (a vehicle)
escribir	to write	traer	to bring
hacer	to do, make	vender	to sell
ir	to go	ver	to see, watch
leer	to read	venir	to come
		vivir	to live



Read each memory tip completely and out loud.
Let the rhythm of the tip register in your mind.

ABRIR = to open — The flowers OPEN in **ABRIL**.
abrir = to open.

APRENDER = to learn — An **APPRENTICE** is one
who is LEARNING.
aprender = to learn.

COMER = to eat — **COME EAT!**
comer = to eat

CONOCER = to know, meet (a person or place) —
Is to have **CONSCIOUSNESS** of a PERSON
or PLACE.
conocer = to know, meet a person or place.

CONSEGUIR = to get, obtain — A **CONCIERGE** in a
hotel GETS things for you.
conseguir = to get.

CORRER = to run, flow — A **COURIER** RUNS things.
correr = to run.

CREER = to believe — Your **CREED** is your BELIEF.
creer = to believe.

DECIDIR = to decide — Looks like **DECIDE**.
decidir = to decide.

DECIR = to say, tell — I SAY OR TELL you my
DECISION.
decir = to say, tell.

DORMIR = to sleep — Students SLEEP in
a **DORMITORY**.
dormir = to sleep.

ENTENDER = to understand — I **INTEND** to
UNDERSTAND.
entender = to understand.

ESCRIBIR = to write — A **SCRIBE** WRITES.
escribir = to write.

HACER = to do, make — An **ACE** can DO or
MAKE anything.
hacer = to do, make.

IR (VOY) = to go (I go) — Think of GOING on a
VOYAGE to **IRELAND**.
ir (voy) = to go (I go).

LEER = to read — Have you READ King **LEAR**?
leer = to read.

MOVER = to move (something) — Looks like **MOVE**.
mover = to move (something).

OÍR = to hear — Think of **O-EAR**, can you **HEAR**?
oír = hear.

PEDIR = to ask for — A **PETITION** is when you
ASK FOR something.
pedir = ask for.

PERDER = to lose — **PERDITION**, hell, is for
LOST souls.
perder = to lose.

PONER = to put — **PUT** the **PONY** into the barn.
poner = to put.

RECIBIR = to receive — Looks like **RECEIVE**.
recibir = receive.

SABER = to know (information) — We all **KNOW**
that the **SABER** tooth tiger is extinct.
saber = to know.

SALIR = to leave, go out — The **SAILOR** is
always **LEAVING**.
salir = to leave, go out.

SEGUIR = to follow — A **SEQUEL** FOLLOWS an
original = to follow.

SER = to be (permanent, a label) — Once a **SIR**
always a **SER**.
ser = to be (permanent, a label).

SUBIR = go up, get into (a vehicle) —
“**SUBIR**” man GOES UP and **SUBLIME**
thoughts are HIGH thoughts.
subir = get on, go up.

TRAER = to bring — We BRING things on **TRAYS**.
traer = to bring.

VENDER = to sell — A **VENDOR** SELLS things.
vender = to sell.

VER = to see, watch — You can SEE through a **VEIL**.
ver = to see, watch.

VENIR = to come — Think of COMING down
the **AVENUE**.
venir = to come.

VIVIR = to live — A **VIVACIOUS** person is a person
who is LIVELY.
vivir = to live.

Vocabulary quiz



Quiz yourself on the vocabulary you just studied. **answers on page 25**



55 possible

- wrong

 total score

If you got 44 correct, congratulations!
Retest yourself on the items you missed.

1. I want _____
2. you want _____
3. to buy _____
4. to find _____
5. to listen _____
6. to spend _____
7. to fill _____
8. to clean _____
9. to prepare _____
10. to walk _____
11. to sing _____
12. to close _____
13. to cook _____
14. to answer _____
15. to start _____
16. to earn _____
17. to take (mode of transportation) _____
18. to taste _____
19. to drink _____
20. to play (instrument) _____
21. to dance _____
22. to pass by _____
23. to introduce _____
24. to sign _____
25. to leave behind _____
26. to travel _____
27. (a lot of/more) money _____
28. a taxi _____
29. purified water _____
30. the guitar _____
31. my/your house _____
32. my/your friend _____
33. a bank _____
34. the music _____
35. the tank _____
36. the kitchen _____
37. the dinner _____
38. a song _____
39. the door _____
40. the question _____
41. the cake _____
42. instrument _____
43. the bill _____
44. the suitcase _____
45. with you _____
46. tomorrow _____
47. now _____
48. later _____
49. here _____
50. with me _____
51. tonight _____
52. what ...? _____
53. which ...? _____
54. when ...? _____
55. (to) where ...? _____


P

This is the vocabulary that will be used in the following section.
Study it, highlight difficult words, then do the exercises on the next pages.

- | | | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. voy a | I'm going to | 29. una cerveza | a beer |
| 2. va a | you're going to | 30. los trastes | the dishes |
| 3. salir | to leave | 31. la comida | the food, lunch |
| 4. visitar | to visit | 32. el parque | the park |
| 5. esperar | wait for | 33. la oficina | the office |
| 6. conocer | meet, know | 34. el centro | the center (downtown) |
| 7. lavar | to wash | 35. el desayuno | (the) breakfast |
| 8. arreglar | to fix, arrange | 36. mi clase | my class |
| 9. comer | to eat | 37. el mercado | the market |
| 10. dormir | to sleep | 38. la tienda | the store |
| 11. correr | to run | 39. el maestro | the teacher |
| 12. recibir | to receive | 40. un refresco | a soft drink |
| 13. hacer | to do | 41. el paquete | the package |
| 14. bajar | to get out (of a vehicle) | 42. un departamento | an apartment |
| 15. presentar | to introduce | 43. el programa | the program |
| 16. caminar | to walk | | |
| 17. pensar | to think (about) | 44. antes de | before |
| 18. abrir | to open | 45. después de | after |
| 19. aprender | to learn | 46. a, al | to |
| 20. conseguir | to get | 47. de, del | from |
| 21. venir | to come | 48. hasta | until |
| 22. decidir | to decide | 49. conmigo | with me |
| 23. escribir | to write | 50. esta (mañana) | this (morning) |
| 24. estar | to be | 51. mañana en la tarde | tomorrow afternoon |
| 25. vender | to sell | 52. esta tarde | this afternoon |
| 26. ver | to see | 53. cuanto antes | as soon as possible |
| 27. mi esposo/a | my husband/wife | 54. un poco más | a little more |
| 28. la niña | the girl | 55. de seguro | for sure |
| | | 56. ¿A qué hora | At what time? |

34 Time frames and the personal 'a'

Time frames (review) refer to page 14.

HOY	today	MAÑANA EN LA MAÑANA	tomorrow morning
MAÑANA	tomorrow	MAÑANA EN LA TARDE	tomorrow afternoon
ESTA MAÑANA	this morning	MAÑANA EN LA NOCHE	tomorrow night
ESTA TARDE	this afternoon	A LA UNA	at 1 o'clock
ESTA NOCHE	tonight	A LAS OCHO	at 8 o'clock

E>S answers below

1. Do you need to begin today? _____
Yes, I need to begin today at 1 o'clock. _____
2. Do you need to work tomorrow morning? _____
Yes, I need to work tomorrow morning at 8:00. _____
3. Do you need to leave tonight? _____
No, I don't need to leave until tomorrow night. _____ hasta
4. Do you want to exchange money today? _____
Yes, I want to exchange money this afternoon. _____

The Personal 'a'

'a' always precedes a person when the person is the object of a verb.

Necesito invitar a Juan. = I need to invite Juan.

Quiero visitar a mi amigo. = I want to visit my friend.

The personal 'a' tells the listener that the thing that follows is a person.

Quiero visitar a San Miguel. The 'a' tells the listener that you want to visit the saint himself.

Quiero visitar San Miguel. No 'a' tells the listener that you want to visit the city San Miguel.

E>S answers below

1. I need to look for my daughter. _____ hija
2. I want to visit José. _____
3. I need to wait for my friends. _____ mis amigos
4. I want to invite my husband/wife. _____ mi esposo/a
5. I want to see the girl. _____ la niña
6. Do you want to meet our friends? _____ nuestros amigos



TIME FRAMES

1. ¿Necesita empezar hoy?
Sí, necesito empezar hoy a la una.
2. ¿Necesita trabajar mañana en la mañana?
Sí, necesito trabajar mañana en la mañana a las ocho.
3. ¿Necesita salir esta noche?
No, no necesito salir hasta mañana en la noche.
4. ¿Quiere cambiar dinero hoy?
Sí, quiero cambiar dinero esta tarde.

THE PERSONAL 'A'

1. Necesito buscar a mi hija.
2. Quiero visitar a José.
3. Necesito esperar a mis amigos.
4. Quiero invitar a mi esposo/a.
5. Quiero ver a la niña.
6. ¿Quiere conocer a nuestros amigos?

Before and After

ANTES DE = BEFORE and **DESPUÉS DE** = AFTER.
Both are followed by an infinitive which translates to an '-ing' form when translated into English.

antes de estudiar = before studying
después de comer = after eating

E/S answers below

1. I want to drink a beer before ordering. _____ una cerveza
2. I need to wash the dishes after eating. _____ los trastes
3. I need to fix the car before using it. _____
4. I want to sleep after finishing lunch. _____ la comida
5. I need to talk with my spouse before going. _____ con mi esposo/a
6. I need to rest after running. _____
7. I want to receive it (*m*) before sending money. _____
8. I want to test it (*m*) before buying it. _____

A + EL = AL = to the...

DE + EI = DEL = from the...

Notice how these words combine to make one.

al mercado = to the market

del mercado = from the market

This combination is not used with feminine nouns.

a la tienda = to the store

de la tienda = from the store

E/S answers below

1. I need to return from the store as soon as possible. _____ cuento antes
2. I want to drive to the market. _____ (el) mercado
3. I need to get out of (from) the taxi here. _____ aqui
4. I want to introduce the teacher (*m*). _____ (el) maestro
5. Do you want to walk to the park with me? _____ (el) parque
6. Do you need to send it (*m*) to the office? _____ (la) oficina
7. Do you need to get it (*m*) from the bank? _____ (el) banco
8. Do you want to take the bus (to) downtown? _____ (el) centro

A

ANTES / DESPUÉS

1. Quiero tomar una cerveza **antes de** ordenar.
2. Necesito lavar los trastes **después de** comer.
3. Necesito arreglar el coche **antes de** usarlo.
4. Quiero dormir **después de** terminar la comida.
5. Necesito hablar con mi esposo,-a **antes de** ir.
6. Necesito descansar **después de** correr.
7. Quiero recibirla **antes de** mandar el dinero.
8. Quiero probarlo **antes de** comprarlo.

DEL / AL and DE LA / A LA

1. Necesito regresar **de la tienda** cuento antes.
2. Quiero manejar **al mercado**.
3. Necesito bajar **del taxi** aquí.
4. Quiero presentar **al maestro**.
5. ¿Quiere caminar **al parque** conmigo?
6. ¿Necesita mandarlo **a la oficina**?
7. ¿Necesita conseguirlo **del banco**?
8. ¿Quiere tomar el autobús **al centro**?

Are you going to? = ¿Va a?

	ir a
voy a	vamos a
vas a	
va a	van a

Note that **va** ends with an **a**, indicating ‘you are going (to)’ (*formal*).

¿VA A ...? = Are you going to ...?

Ir is usually followed with *a*, as in
Va a ... = You’re going **to** ...

Ir can also be followed by *con*, as in
¿Va con José? = Are you going with Jose?

What time vs. When

A qué hora = What time
(see #8, 13, 14) is used to request a time of day (e.g., at 8 o’clock).

Cuándo = when (see #9-12, 15-20)
is used for a more extensive period of time (day, year).



answers on page 38

1. Are you going to invite Jose to the party? ¿Va a invitar a José a la fiesta?
2. Are you going to think about it (*m*)? _____
3. Are you going to prepare breakfast in the morning? _____
4. Are you going to open the package? _____ el paquete
5. Are you going to look for an apartment? _____ un departamento
6. What are you going to drink? _____
7. What are you going to learn? _____
8. What time are you going to finish? _____ ¿A qué hora
9. When are you going to see Jose? _____ ¿Cuándo
10. When are you going to rest? _____
11. When are you going to return? _____
12. When are you going to arrive? _____
13. What time are you going to see the program? _____ el programa
14. What time are you going to eat? _____
15. When are you going to get the money? _____
16. When are you going to do it (*m*)? _____
17. When are you going to play tennis? _____
18. When are you going to come to my house? _____
19. When are you going to leave? _____
20. When are you going to decide? _____
21. When are you going to write the letter? _____
22. Where are you going to be tonight? _____ esta noche
23. To where are you going to go this afternoon? _____ ¿Adónde
24. Where are you going to sell your car? _____ su coche

voy a	vamos a
vas a	
va a	van a

I am going to = Voy a

Voy indicates 'I am going;' **Voy a** means 'I am going to.'



answers on page 38

1. I'm going to invite Jose to the party. Voy a invitar a José a la fiesta.
2. I'm going to think about it (*m*) a little more. _____ *un poco más*
3. I'm not going to prepare breakfast in the morning. _____ *el desayuno*
4. I'm going to open it (*m*). _____
5. I'm going to look for one. _____ *uno*
6. I'm going to drink a soft drink. _____ *un refresco*
7. I'm going to learn Spanish. _____
8. I'm going to finish today at 3:00. _____ *a las tres*
9. I'm going to see him today for sure. _____ *de seguro*
10. I'm going to rest after returning home. _____
11. I'm going to return as soon as possible. _____ *cuanto antes*
12. I'm going to arrive tomorrow night. _____ *mañana en la noche*
13. I'm going to see it (*m*) tonight. _____
14. I'm going to eat this afternoon at 2:00. _____
15. I'm going to get it (*m*) today. _____
16. I'm going to do it (*m*) tonight. _____
17. I'm going to play tennis at 9:00. _____
18. I'm going to come tomorrow afternoon. _____
19. I'm going to leave tonight at 10:00. _____ *a las diez*
20. I'm going to decide as soon as possible. _____
21. I'm going to write the letter tonight. _____ *la carta*
22. I'm going to be in my hotel after 10:00. _____ *después de las diez*
23. I'm going to go to the market this afternoon. _____ *el mercado*
24. I'm going to sell it (*m*) in Mexico. _____

¿Va a? - Voy a



Disc 1 track 11
Cassette 1 side B



THESE ARE THE 5-POINT
QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS
ON YOUR TURQUOISE CARDS

Use the questions and answers as a spoken exercise.
Answer with *sí* or *no* as appropriate.
Work with the recording, a partner, or alone.
Focus on your pronunciation.

A

for page 36

for page 37

- | | | |
|---|-------------------|--|
| 1. ¿Va a invitar a José a la fiesta? | Sí ... No, no ... | 1. Voy a invitar a José a la fiesta. |
| 2. ¿Va a pensarlo? | Sí ... No, no ... | 2. Voy a pensarlo un poco más. |
| 3. ¿Va a preparar el desayuno en la mañana? | Sí ... No, no ... | 3. Voy a preparar el desayuno en la mañana. |
| 4. ¿Va a abrir el paquete? | Sí ... No, no ... | 4. Voy a abrirlo. |
| 5. ¿Va a buscar un departamento? | Sí ... No, no ... | 5. Voy a buscar uno. |
| 6. ¿Qué va a tomar? | | 6. Voy a tomar un refresco. |
| 7. ¿Qué va a aprender? | | 7. Voy a aprender español. |
| 8. ¿A qué hora va a terminar? | | 8. Voy a terminar hoy a las tres. |
| 9. ¿Cuándo va a ver a José? | | 9. Voy a verlo hoy de seguro. |
| 10. ¿Cuándo va a descansar? | | 10. Voy a descansar después de regresar a casa. |
| 11. ¿Cuándo va a regresar? | | 11. Voy a regresar cuanto antes. |
| 12. ¿Cuándo va a llegar? | | 12. Voy a llegar mañana en la noche. |
| 13. ¿A qué hora va a ver el programa? | | 13. Voy a verlo esta noche a las ocho. |
| 14. ¿A qué hora va a comer? | | 14. Voy a comer esta tarde a las dos. |
| 15. ¿Cuándo va a conseguir el dinero? | | 15. Voy a conseguirlo hoy. |
| 16. ¿Cuándo va a hacerlo? | | 16. Voy a hacerlo esta noche. |
| 17. ¿Cuándo va a jugar tenis? | | 17. Voy a jugar tenis a las nueve. |
| 18. ¿Cuándo va a venir a mi casa? | | 18. Voy a venir mañana en la tarde. |
| 19. ¿Cuándo va a salir? | | 19. Voy a salir esta noche a las diez. |
| 20. ¿Cuándo va a decidir? | | 20. Voy a decidir cuanto antes. |
| 21. ¿Cuándo va a escribir la carta? | | 21. Voy a escribir la carta esta noche. |
| 22. ¿Dónde va a estar esta noche? | | 22. Voy a estar en mi hotel después de las diez. |
| 23. ¿Adónde va a ir esta tarde? | | 23. Voy a ir al mercado esta tarde. |
| 24. ¿Dónde va a vender su coche? | | 24. Voy a venderlo en México. |

Are you going to? - I'm going to

39



This is the English version of the questions and answers on the preceding page.
Translate them into Spanish orally until you can do it easily.
Highlight the words that give you problems.

ES

answers on previous page

1. Are you going to invite Jose to the party? Yes ... No ... 1. I'm (not) going to invite Jose to the party.
2. Are you going to think about it (*m*)? Yes ... No ... 2. I'm (not) going to think about it (*m*) a little more.
3. Are you going to prepare breakfast in the morning? Yes ... No ... 3. I'm (not) going to prepare breakfast in the morning.
4. Are you going to open the package? Yes ... No ... 4. I'm (not) going to open it (*m*).
5. Are you going to look for an apartment? Yes ... No ... 5. I'm going to look for one (*m*).
6. What are you going to drink? 6. I'm going to drink a soft drink.
7. What are you going to learn? 7. I'm going to learn Spanish.
8. What time are you going to finish? 8. I'm going to finish today at 3:00.
9. When are you going to see Jose? 9. I'm going to see him today for sure.
10. When are you going to rest? 10. I'm going to rest after returning home.
11. When are you going to return? 11. I'm going to return as soon as possible.
12. When are you going to arrive? 12. I'm going to arrive tomorrow night.
13. What time are you going to see the program? 13. I'm going to see it tonight at 8:00.
14. What time are you going to eat? 14. I'm going to eat this afternoon at 2:00.
15. When are you going to get the money? 15. I'm going to get it (*m*) today.
16. When are you going to do it (*m*)? 16. I'm going to do it (*m*) tonight.
17. When are you going to play tennis? 17. I'm going to play tennis at 9:00.
18. When are you going to come to my house? 18. I'm going to come tomorrow afternoon.
19. When are you going to leave? 19. I'm going to leave tonight at 10:00.
20. When are you going to decide? 20. I'm going to decide as soon as possible.
21. When are you going to write the letter? 21. I'm going to write the letter tonight.
22. Where are you going to be tonight? 22. I'm going to be in my hotel after 10:00.
23. To where are you going to go this afternoon? 23. I'm going to go to the market this afternoon.
24. Where are you going to sell your car? 24. I'm going to sell it (*m*) in Mexico.

Vocabulary quiz



Quiz yourself on the vocabulary you just studied. **answers on page 33**



56 possible

- wrong

 total score

If you got 45 correct, congratulations!
Retest yourself on the items you missed.

1. I'm going _____
2. you're going _____
3. to leave _____
4. to visit _____
5. to wait for _____
6. to meet _____
7. to wash _____
8. to fix _____
9. to eat _____
10. to sleep _____
11. to run _____
12. to receive _____
13. to do _____
14. to lower, get out _____
15. to introduce _____
16. to walk _____
17. to think _____
18. to open _____
19. to learn _____
20. to get _____
21. to come _____
22. to decide _____
23. to write _____
24. to be (temporary) _____
25. to sell _____
26. to see _____
27. my spouse _____
28. the girl _____
29. a beer _____
30. the dishes _____
31. the food, lunch _____
32. the park _____
33. the office _____
34. downtown _____
35. the breakfast _____
36. my class _____
37. the market _____
38. the store _____
39. the teacher _____
40. a soft drink _____
41. the package _____
42. an apartment _____
43. the program _____
44. before _____
45. after _____
46. to _____
47. from _____
48. until _____
49. with me _____
50. this (morning) _____
51. tomorrow morning _____
52. this afternoon _____
53. as soon as possible _____
54. a little more _____
55. for sure _____
56. What time? _____

**P**

This is the vocabulary that will be used in the following section.
Study it, highlight difficult words, then do the exercises on the next pages.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|----------------|---------------------------|----------------|
| 1. puedo | I can | 31. su chamarra | your jacket |
| 2. puede | you can | 32. la fruta | the fruit |
| 3. olvidar | to forget | 33. el libro | the book |
| 4. recomendar | to recommend | 34. la llave | the key |
| 5. invitar | to invite | 35. una computadora | a computer |
| 6. recordar | to remember | 36. la estatua | the statue |
| 7. dar | to give | 37. la puerta | the door |
| 8. traer | to bring | 38. el timbre | the (door)bell |
| 9. mover | to move | 39. mi reloj | my watch |
| 10. pedir | to ask for | 40. la ventana | the window |
| 11. seguir | to follow | 41. la basura | the trash |
| 12. llevar | to carry, wear | 42. mi bolsa | my bag |
| 13. poner | to put | 43. un restaurante | a restaurant |
| 14. leer | to read | 44. la cocina | the kitchen |
| 15. sacar | to take out | 45. picante | hot-spicy |
| 16. vender | to sell | 46. mexicana | Mexican |
| 17. comer | to eat | 47. buen | good |
| 18. dormir | to sleep | 48. allí | there |
| 19. abrir | to open | 49. ahorita | right away |
| 20. creer | to believe | 50. muy bien | very well |
| 21. entender | to understand | 51. (esta) semana | (this) week |
| 22. ayudar | to help | 52. con | with |
| 23. oír | to hear | 53. ella | her |
| 24. cerrar | to close | 54. sin | without |
| 26. limpiar | to clean | 55. por | for |
| 27. salir | to leave | 56. cinco minutos | five minutes |
| 28. escribir | to write | 57. por favor | please |
| 29. hacer | to do, make | | |
| 30. platicar | to chat | | |

Integration drill, I and you (formal)



This is a timed exercise. Set your clock for three minutes.
 Translate from English to Spanish.

1. I need	Necesito	26. You're going to	Va a
2. You need	Necesita	27. You want	Quiere
3. I want	Quiero	28. I need	Necesito
4. You want	Quiere	29. I'm going to	Voy a
5. I'm going to	Voy a	30. You want	Quiere
6. You're going to	Va a	31. You need	Necesita
7. You want	Quiere	32. I need	Necesito
8. I need	Necesito	33. You're going to	Va a
9. I'm going to	Voy a	34. I want	Quiero
10. You need	Necesita	35. I need	Necesito
11. You're going to	Va a	36. You need	Necesita
12. You need	Necesita	37. I'm going to	Voy a
13. I'm going to	Voy a	38. You need	Necesita
14. I need	Necesito	39. You want	Quiere
15. I want	Quiero	40. I'm going to	Voy a
16. You need	Necesita	41. You need	Necesita
17. I need	Necesito	42. I want	Quiero
18. You want	Quiere	43. You're going to	Va a
19. I want	Quiero	44. I need	Necesito
20. I'm going to	Voy a	45. You need	Necesita
21. I need	Necesito	46. I want	Quiero
22. You need	Necesita	47. I'm going to	Voy a
23. I want	Quiero	48. You want	Quiere
24. You want	Quiere	49. You need	Necesita
25. I'm going to	Voy a	50. I want	Quiero

Direct object pronouns: me, you, him, her, us, them

Direct Object Pronouns

Beginning students often repeat the whole question when they answer:

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>¿Quiere pagar la cuenta?</i> | = Do you want to pay the bill? |
| <i>Sí, quiero pagar la cuenta.</i> | = Yes, I want to pay the bill. |

More experienced speakers wouldn't repeat the whole sentence, they would abbreviate the answer:

- | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Sí, quiero pagarla.</i> | = Yes, I want to pay it. |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|

It is important to learn to replace the noun with the object pronoun (it, him, her, etc.).

me = me	nos = us
te = you familiar	
lo = him/it (m), you formal (m)	los = them, you all (m, m&f)
la = her/it (f), you formal (f)	las = them, you all (f)

Object pronouns can be attached directly to the end of the infinitive.

- | | | |
|---|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| I want to buy it (the book). | (el libro) | <i>Quiero comprarlo.</i> |
| I want to buy them (the books). | (los libros) | <i>Quiero comprarlos.</i> |
| I want to buy it (the fruit). | (la fruta) | <i>Quiero comprarla.</i> |
| I want to buy them (the fruits). | (las frutas) | <i>Quiero comprarlas.</i> |
| I want to invite them (José and María). | (a José y María) | <i>Quiero invitarlos.</i> |
| Do you want to invite me? | | <i>¿Quiere invitarme?</i> |
| Yes, I want to invite you (familiar) | | <i>Sí, quiero invitarte.</i> |
| Do you want to invite us? | | <i>¿Quiere invitarnos?</i> |
| Yes, I want to invite you all (m.) | | <i>Sí, quiero invitarlos.</i> |

Fill in the blank with the pronoun.



Attach the pronoun to the infinitive.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. No voy a olvidar <u>la</u> . (la llave) | 1. Are you going to follow me? _____ |
| 2. Quiero recomendar _____. (el hotel) | Yes, I'm going to follow you (<i>m</i> formal). _____ |
| 3. Necesito invitar _____. (a José) | 2. Do you need to see us? _____ |
| 4. Voy a recordar _____. (la dirección) | Yes, I need to see you all (<i>m</i>). _____ |
| 5. Quiero dar _____. (el regalo) | 3. Are you going to carry your suitcase? _____ su maleta |
| 6. Necesito traer _____. (los libros) | Yes, I am going to carry it. _____ |
| 7. Voy a mover _____. (el coche) | 4. Do you want to put the fruit here? _____ la fruta |
| 8. Necesito pedir _____. (la cuenta) | No, I want to put it there. _____ allí |
| | 5. Are you going to read the book? _____ el libro |
| | Yes, I'm going to read it. _____ |



1. No voy a olvidarla.
2. Quiero recomendarlo.
3. Necesito invitarlo.
4. Voy a recordarla.
5. Quiero darlo.
6. Necesito traerlos.
7. Voy a moverlo.
8. Necesito pedirla.

1. ¿Va a seguirme? Sí, voy a seguirlo.
2. ¿Necesita verlos? Sí, necesito verlos.
3. ¿Va a llevar su maleta? Sí, voy a llevarla.
4. ¿Quiere poner la fruta aquí? No, quiero ponerla allí.
5. ¿Va a leer el libro? Sí, voy a leerlo.

Can you? = ¿Puede?

poder	
puedo	podemos
puedes	
puede	pueden

Note that *puede* ends with an **e**, indicating 'you can' (*formal*).

Por favor and Gracias

When you make a request, use *por favor* to say 'please.'

Gracias = thank you.



answers on page 46

1. Can you sell your car in Mexico? *¿Puede vender su coche en México?* _____
2. Can you use a computer? _____ una computadora
3. Can you see the statue? _____ la estatua
4. Can you eat chiles? _____
5. Can you sleep well at your house? _____
6. Can you open the door? _____ la puerta
7. Can you believe it (*m*)? _____
8. Can you understand? _____
9. Can you hear the doorbell? _____ el timbre
10. Can you cook Mexican food? _____
11. Can you work tomorrow? _____
12. Can you help me, please? _____
13. Can you fix my watch, please? _____ mi reloj
14. Can you wait here, please? _____ por favor
15. Can you close the window, please? _____ la ventana
16. Can you take out the garbage, please? _____ la basura
17. Can you carry my bag, please? _____ mi bolsa
18. Can you recommend a good restaurant? _____ un buen restaurante
19. When can you clean the kitchen? _____ la cocina
20. What time can you leave? _____
21. When can you write the letter? _____
22. What time can you finish? _____
23. When can you do it (*m*)? _____
24. When can you chat with María? _____

poder	
puedo	podemos
puedes	
puede	pueden

Note that *puedo* ends with an **o**, indicating 'I can.'

Comida picante = spicy-hot food (see #4)

In English we refer to spicy food as *hot* food.

In Spanish, we refer to spicy food as *stinging* food.

The verb *picar* means *to sting*. *Comida picante* is *stinging food* or **spicy-hot** food. *Caliente* refers to **temperature-hot**.



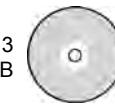
answers on page 46

1. I can't sell it (*m*) in Mexico. No puedo venderlo en México.
2. I can use one (*f*). _____
3. I can't see it (*f*). _____
4. I can't eat hot-spicy food. _____ comida picante
5. I can't sleep very well. _____ muy bien
6. I can't open it (*f*) without the key. _____ sin la llave
7. I can't believe it (*m*). _____
8. I can't understand. _____
9. I can't hear it (*m*). _____
10. I can cook Mexican food. _____ comida mexicana
11. I can work tomorrow morning. _____
12. I can help you (*f*). _____
13. I can't fix it (*m*). _____
14. I can wait for five minutes. _____ cinco minutos
15. I can close it (*f*). _____
16. I can take it (*f*) out. _____
17. I can carry it (*f*). _____
18. I can recommend one. _____
19. I can clean it (*f*) right away. _____ ahorita
20. I can leave at 8:00 at night. _____ en la noche
21. I can write it (*f*) this week. _____ esta semana
22. I can finish tomorrow morning at 11:00. _____
23. I can do it (*m*) later. _____ más tarde
24. I can chat with her tomorrow. _____ con ella

¿Puede? - Puedo



Disc 1 track 13
Cassette 1 side B



THESE ARE THE 5-POINT
QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS
ON YOUR WHITE CARDS



Use the questions and answers as a spoken exercise.

Answer with *sí* or *no* as appropriate.

Work with the recording, a partner, or alone.

Focus on your pronunciation.

A

for page 44

for page 45

- | | | |
|--|-------------------|--|
| 1. ¿Puede vender su coche en México? | Sí ... No, no ... | 1. Puedo venderlo en México. |
| 2. ¿Puede usar una computadora? | Sí ... No, no ... | 2. Puedo usar una. |
| 3. ¿Puede ver la estatua? | Sí ... No, no ... | 3. Puedo verla. |
| 4. ¿Puede comer chiles? | Sí ... No, no ... | 4. Puedo comer comida picante. |
| 5. ¿Puede dormir bien en su casa? | Sí ... No, no ... | 5. Puedo dormir muy bien. |
| 6. ¿Puede abrir la puerta? | Sí ... No, no ... | 6. Puedo abrirla sin la llave. |
| 7. ¿Puede creerlo? | Sí ... No, no ... | 7. Puedo creerlo. |
| 8. ¿Puede entender? | Sí ... No, no ... | 8. Puedo entender. |
| 9. ¿Puede oír el timbre? | Sí ... No, no ... | 9. Puedo oírlo. |
| 10. ¿Puede cocinar comida mexicana? | Sí ... No, no ... | 10. Puedo cocinar comida mexicana. |
| 11. ¿Puede trabajar mañana? | Sí ... No, no ... | 11. Puedo trabajar mañana en la mañana. |
| 12. ¿Puede ayudarme? | Sí ... No, no ... | 12. Puedo ayudarla. |
| 13. ¿Puede arreglar mi reloj, por favor? | Sí ... No, no ... | 13. Puedo arreglarlo. |
| 14. ¿Puede esperar aquí, por favor? | Sí ... No, no ... | 14. Puedo esperar cinco minutos. |
| 15. ¿Puede cerrar la ventana, por favor? | Sí ... No, no ... | 15. Puedo cerrarla. |
| 16. ¿Puede sacar la basura, por favor? | Sí ... No, no ... | 16. Puedo sacarla. |
| 17. ¿Puede llevar mi bolsa, por favor? | Sí ... No, no ... | 17. Puedo llevarla. |
| 18. ¿Puede recomendar un buen restaurante? | Sí ... No, no ... | 18. Puedo recomendar uno. |
| 19. ¿Cuándo puede limpiar la cocina? | | 19. Puedo limpiarla ahorita. |
| 20. ¿A qué hora puede salir? | | 20. Puedo salir a las ocho en la noche. |
| 21. ¿Cuándo puede escribir la carta? | | 21. Puedo escribirla esta semana. |
| 22. ¿A qué hora puede terminar? | | 22. Puedo terminar mañana en la mañana a las once. |
| 23. ¿Cuándo puede hacerlo? | | 23. Puedo hacerlo más tarde. |
| 24. ¿Cuándo puede platicar con María? | | 24. Puedo platicar con ella mañana. |



This is the English version of the questions and answers on the preceding page.
Translate them into Spanish orally until you can do it easily.
Highlight the words that give you problems.

E►S

answers on previous page

- | | | |
|---|----------------|--|
| 1. Can you sell your car in Mexico? | Yes ... No ... | 1. I can('t) sell it (<i>m</i>) in Mexico. |
| 2. Can you use a computer? | Yes ... No ... | 2. I can('t) use a one (<i>f</i>). |
| 3. Can you see the statue? | Yes ... No ... | 3. I can('t) see it (<i>f</i>). |
| 4. Can you eat chiles? | Yes ... No ... | 4. I can('t) eat hot-spicy food. |
| 5. Can you sleep well in your house? | Yes ... No ... | 5. I can('t) sleep very well. |
| 6. Can you open the door? | Yes ... No ... | 6. I can('t) open it (<i>f</i>) without the key. |
| 7. Can you believe it (<i>m</i>)? | Yes ... No ... | 7. I can('t) believe it (<i>m</i>). |
| 8. Can you understand? | Yes ... No ... | 8. I can('t) understand. |
| 9. Can you hear the doorbell? | Yes ... No ... | 9. I can('t) hear it (<i>m</i>). |
| 10. Can you cook Mexican food? | Yes ... No ... | 10. I can('t) cook Mexican food. |
| 11. Can you work tomorrow? | Yes ... No ... | 11. I can('t) work tomorrow morning. |
| 12. Can you help me, please? | Yes ... No ... | 12. I can('t) help you (<i>f</i>). |
| 13. Can you fix my watch, please? | Yes ... No ... | 13. I can('t) fix it (<i>m</i>). |
| 14. Can you wait here, please? | Yes ... No ... | 14. I can wait for five minutes. |
| 15. Can you close the window, please? | Yes ... No ... | 15. I can('t) close it (<i>f</i>). |
| 16. Can you take out the garbage, please? | Yes ... No ... | 16. I can('t) take it (<i>f</i>) <i>out</i> . |
| 17. Can you carry my bag, please? | Yes ... No ... | 17. I can('t) carry it (<i>f</i>). |
| 18. Can you recommend a good restaurant? | Yes ... No ... | 18. I can('t) recommend one (<i>m</i>). |
| 19. When can you clean the kitchen? | | 19. I can clean it (<i>f</i>) right away. |
| 20. What time can you leave? | | 20. I can leave at 8:00 at night. |
| 21. When can you write the letter? | | 21. I can write it (<i>f</i>) this week. |
| 22. What time can you finish? | | 22. I can finish tomorrow morning at 11:00. |
| 23. When can you do it (<i>m</i>)? | | 23. I can do it (<i>m</i>) later. |
| 24. When can you chat with María? | | 24. I can chat with her tomorrow. |

Vocabulary quiz



Quiz yourself on the vocabulary you just studied. **answers on page 41**



57 possible

- wrong

 total score

If you got 46 correct, congratulations!
Retest yourself on the items you missed.

1. I can _____
2. you can _____
3. to forget _____
4. to recommend _____
5. to invite _____
6. to remember _____
7. to give _____
8. to bring _____
9. to move _____
10. to ask for _____
11. to follow _____
12. to carry, wear _____
13. to put _____
14. to read _____
15. to take out _____
16. to sell _____
17. to eat _____
18. to sleep _____
19. to open _____
20. to believe _____
21. to understand _____
22. to help _____
23. to hear _____
24. to close _____
26. to clean _____
27. to leave _____
28. to write _____
29. to do _____
30. to chat _____
31. your jacket _____
32. the fruit _____
33. the book _____
34. the key _____
35. a computer _____
36. the statue _____
37. the door _____
38. the (door)bell _____
39. my watch _____
40. the window _____
41. the trash _____
42. my bag _____
43. a restaurant _____
44. the kitchen _____
45. hot-spicy _____
46. Mexican _____
47. good _____
48. there _____
49. right away _____
50. very well _____
51. (this) week _____
52. with _____
53. her _____
54. without _____
55. for _____
56. five minutes _____
57. please _____


P

This is the vocabulary that will be used in the following section.
Study it, highlight difficult words, then do the exercises on the next pages.

1. me gusta.....	I like	29. la historia	the history
2. le gusta	you like	30. la mesa	the table
3. salir.....	to leave	31. las sillas	the chairs
4. llegar	to arrive	32. las escaleras	the stairs
5. escribir	to write	33. los zapatos.....	the shoes
6. olvidar	to forget	34. el contrato	the contract
7. traer	to bring	35. los muchachos	the boys
8. dar.....	to give	36. el restaurante	the restaurant
9. aprender	to learn	37. el hombre.....	the man
10. entender	to understand	38. la mujer	the woman
11. vivir	to live	39. el cuarto.....	the room
12. descansar	to rest	40. la carne	the meat
13. poner	to put	41. todo	everything
14. perder	to lose	42. los ejercicios	the exercises
15. ver	to see	43. la música	the music
16. saber	to know	44. el cine.....	the movie theatre
17. mover	to move (something)	45. el deporte	the sport
18. subir	to go up	46. el instrumento	the instrument
19. llevar	to wear, carry	47. la crema	the cream
20. firmar	to sign	48. el azúcar.....	the sugar
21. seguir	to follow	49. cosas	things
22. recomendar	to recommend	50. el centro.....	downtown
23. pedir	to ask for	51. debajo de	underneath
24. decir	to say	52. de lunes a viernes ..	Monday through Friday
25. el número.....	the number	53. cada día	every day
26. los dulces.....	the candies	54. ¿qué clase de?	what kind of?
27. la maceta	the flowerpot		
28. la película.....	the film		



answers below

Why (*¿por qué?*) and Because (*porque*)

Note that **por qué** (why) is two words and has an accent while **porque** (because) is one word without an accent.

1. Why are you going to leave today? _____
Because I want to arrive tomorrow. _____
2. Why do you need to write the number? _____ el número
Because I don't want to forget it. _____
3. Why are you going to bring the candies? _____ dulces
Because I want to give a gift. _____
4. Why do you need to learn Spanish? _____
Because I need to be able to understand my friends. _____
5. Why do you want to live in Mexico? _____
I want to live in Mexico because I want to rest. _____
6. Why are you going to put the key under the flowerpot? _____ debajo de la maceta
I'm going to put it there because I don't want to lose it. _____
7. Why do you want to see the film? _____ la película
I want to see it because I need to know more about the history of Mexico. _____ la historia de México



1. ¿Por qué va a salir hoy?
Porque quiero llegar mañana.
2. ¿Por qué necesita escribir el número?
Porque no quiero olvidarlo.
3. ¿Por qué va a traer los dulces?
Porque quiero dar un regalo.
4. ¿Por qué necesita aprender español?
Porque necesito poder entender a mis amigos.
5. Por qué quiere vivir en México?
Quiero vivir en México porque quiero descansar.
6. ¿Por qué va a poner la llave debajo de la maceta?
Voy a ponerla allí porque no quiero perderla.
7. ¿Por qué quiere ver la película?
Quiero verla porque necesito saber más sobre la historia de México.

'This' = ***ESTO*** and 'That' = ***ESO*** are neuter and stand alone

¿Qué es esto? = What is this?
Eso es. = That is it.

Esto es mejor. = This is better.
Quiero pensar en eso. = I want to think about that.

'This' and 'That' when describing people and things

This book = *Este libro* That man = *Ese hombre*

	this	these	that	those
masc.	ESTE	ESTOS	ESE	ESOS
fem.	ESTA	ESTAS	ESA	ESAS

Notice that **this** and **these** have a 'T'
este, estos, esta, estas
and that **that** and **those** has no 'T'
ese, esos, esa, esas.

Like other adjectives, these agree in gender and number with nouns they modify.

Supply the correct form of **this** (*este* or *esta*) or **these** (*estos* or *estas*). answers at bottom of page

- | | | | |
|----------------|----------------|----------|--------------------|
| 1. <u>este</u> | cuarto (room) | 5. _____ | libro |
| 2. _____ | mujer (woman) | 6. _____ | escaleras (stairs) |
| 3. _____ | hombres (men) | 7. _____ | comida |
| 4. _____ | muchacho (boy) | 8. _____ | sillas (chairs) |

Supply the correct form of **that** (*ese* or *esa*) or **those** (*esos* or *esas*). answers at bottom of page

- | | | | |
|---------------|--------------|----------|-----------------|
| 1. <u>esa</u> | mesa (table) | 5. _____ | zapatos (shoes) |
| 2. _____ | coches | 6. _____ | ventana |
| 3. _____ | regalo | 7. _____ | maletas |
| 4. _____ | restaurante | 8. _____ | contratos |



answers below

- I want to move this table and those chairs. _____
- You need to go up those stairs. _____
- I'm going to wear these shoes. _____
- I can sign this contract now. _____
- I'm going to follow those boys. _____
- I can't recommend that restaurant. _____
- I can see that man and that woman. _____
- I'm going to ask for this room. _____



- | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|--|
| 1. este cuarto | 1. esa mesa | 1. Quiero mover esta mesa y esas sillas. |
| 2. esta mujer | 2. esos coches | 2. Necesita subir esas escaleras. |
| 3. estos hombres | 3. ese regalo | 3. Voy a llevar estos zapatos. |
| 4. este muchacho | 4. ese restaurante | 4. Puedo firmar este contrato ahora. |
| 5. este libro | 5. esos zapatos | 5. Voy a seguir a esos muchachos. |
| 6. estas escaleras | 6. esa ventana | 6. No puedo recomendar ese restaurante. |
| 7. esta comida | 7. esas maletas | 7. Puedo ver a ese hombre y a esa mujer. |
| 8. estas sillas | 8. esos contratos | 8. Voy a pedir este cuarto. |

Do you like? = ¿Le gusta?

gustar	
me gusta	nos gusta
te gusta	
le gusta	les gusta

Gusta = pleasing to

Le gusta estudiar.
To you (formal) it is pleasing to study.

Le = to you (formal) in front of '*gusta*' (*le gusta*) means 'it is pleasing TO YOU.' In English we translate this as 'You like to study.'

The pronouns used with *gusta* to indicate **me** and **you** are: ***me*** and ***le***.

¿Le gusta estudiar? *Si, me gusta estudiar.*
To you is it pleasing to study? Yes, to me to study.

You can also add singular nouns to *gusta*. Refer to page 108.



answers on page 54

1. Do you like to cook? ¿Te gusta cocinar?
 2. Do you like to eat meat? _____ la carne
 3. Do you like to taste everything? _____ todo
 4. Do you like to chat in Spanish? _____
 5. Do you like to do exercises? _____ ejercicios
 6. Do you like to sing? _____
 7. Do you like to dance? _____
 8. Do you like to earn a lot of money? _____
 9. Do you like to spend a lot of money? _____
 10. Do you like to drive in Mexico? _____
 11. Do you like to watch (ver) television? _____ la televisión
 12. Do you like to write letters? _____
 13. Do you like to go to the movie theatre? _____ ir al cine
 14. What kind of music do you like to listen to? _____ qué clase de música
 15. What do you like to drink in the morning? _____
 16. What do you like to do? _____
 17. Which sport do you like to play? _____ cuál deporte
 18. What instrument do you like to play? _____ Qué instrumento
 19. What time do you like to study Spanish? _____
 20. When do you like to work? _____
 21. When do you like to read? _____
 22. (To) where do you like to travel? _____
 23. (To) Where do you like to walk? _____
 24. Where do you like to live in México? _____

gustar	
me gusta	nos gusta
te gusta	
le gusta	les gusta

Note that **me** refers to me, indicating 'I like' — 'It is pleasing to me.'

Me gusta _____. = I like _____.

Aquí = here

Allí = there (# 13)



answers on page 54

1. I like to cook. Me gusta cocinar
2. I like to eat it (*f*). _____
3. I like to taste everything once. _____ todo una vez
4. I like to chat in Spanish. _____
5. I like to do them (*m*). _____
6. I like to sing. _____
7. I like to dance. _____
8. I like to earn a lot of money. _____
9. I like to spend a lot. _____
10. I don't like to drive in Mexico. _____
11. I don't like to watch (*ver*) it (*f*) at night. _____ en la noche
12. I don't like to write them (*f*). _____
13. I like to go to there on Sundays. _____ allí los domingos
14. I like to listen to Mexican music. _____
15. I like to drink coffee with cream and sugar. _____ con crema y azúcar
16. I like to do a lot of things. _____ muchas cosas
17. I like to play tennis. _____
18. I like to play the guitar. _____
19. I like to study at 9 in the morning. _____ en la mañana
20. I like to work from Monday through Friday. _____ de lunes a viernes
21. I like to read before sleeping. _____
22. I like to travel to Mexico. _____
23. I like to walk to downtown. _____ al centro
24. I like to live in San Miguel. _____

¿Le gusta? - Me gusta



Disc 1 track 14
Cassette 1 side B



THESE ARE THE 5-POINT
QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS
ON YOUR PINK CARDS



Use the questions and answers as a spoken exercise.
Answer with *sí* or *no* as appropriate.
Work with the recording, a partner, or alone.
Focus on your pronunciation.

A

for page 52

for page 53

- | | | |
|---|-------------------|---|
| 1. ¿Le gusta cocinar? | Sí ... No, no ... | 1. Me gusta cocinar. |
| 2. ¿Le gusta comer carne? | Sí ... No, no ... | 2. Me gusta comerla. |
| 3. ¿Le gusta probar todo? | Sí ... No, no ... | 3. Me gusta probar todo una vez. |
| 4. ¿Le gusta platicar en español? | Sí ... No, no ... | 4. Me gusta platicar en español. |
| 5. ¿Le gusta hacer ejercicios? | Sí ... No, no ... | 5. Me gusta hacerlos. |
| 6. ¿Le gusta cantar? | Sí ... No, no ... | 6. Me gusta cantar. |
| 7. ¿Le gusta bailar? | Sí ... No, no ... | 7. Me gusta bailar. |
| 8. ¿Le gusta ganar dinero? | Sí ... No, no ... | 8. Me gusta ganar mucho. |
| 9. ¿Le gusta gastar dinero? | Sí ... No, no ... | 9. Me gusta gastar mucho dinero. |
| 10. ¿Le gusta manejar en México? | Sí ... No, no ... | 10. Me gusta manejar en México. |
| 11. ¿Le gusta ver televisión? | Sí ... No, no ... | 11. Me gusta verla en la noche. |
| 12. ¿Le gusta escribir cartas? | Sí ... No, no ... | 12. Me gusta escribirlas. |
| 13. ¿Le gusta ir al cine? | Sí ... No, no ... | 13. Me gusta ir allí los domingos. |
| 14. ¿Qué clase de música le gusta escuchar? | | 14. Me gusta escuchar música mexicana. |
| 15. ¿Qué le gusta tomar en la mañana? | | 15. Me gusta tomar café con crema y azúcar. |
| 16. ¿Qué le gusta hacer? | | 16. Me gusta hacer muchas cosas. |
| 17. ¿Cuál deporte le gusta jugar? | | 17. Me gusta jugar tenis. |
| 18. ¿Qué instrumento le gusta tocar? | | 18. Me gusta tocar la guitarra. |
| 19. ¿A qué hora le gusta estudiar español? | | 19. Me gusta estudiar a las nueve en la mañana. |
| 20. ¿Cuándo le gusta trabajar? | | 20. Me gusta trabajar de lunes a viernes. |
| 21. ¿Cuándo le gusta leer? | | 21. Me gusta leer antes de dormir. |
| 22. ¿Adónde le gusta viajar? | | 22. Me gusta viajar a México. |
| 23. ¿Adónde le gusta caminar? | | 23. Me gusta caminar al centro. |
| 24. ¿Dónde le gusta vivir en México? | | 24. Me gusta vivir en San Miguel. |



This is the English version of the questions and answers on the preceding page.
Translate them into Spanish orally until you can do it easily.
Highlight the words that give you problems.

E►S

answers on previous page

- | | | |
|--|----------------------|---|
| 1. Do you like to cook? | Yes ... No... | 1. I (don't) like to cook. |
| 2. Do you like to eat meat? | Yes ... No... | 2. I (don't) like to eat it (<i>f</i>). |
| 3. Do you like to taste everything? | Yes ... No... | 3. I (don't) like to taste everything once. |
| 4. Do you like to chat in Spanish? | Yes ... No... | 4. I (don't) like to chat in Spanish. |
| 5. Do you like to do exercises? | Yes ... No... | 5. I (don't) like to do them (<i>m</i>). |
| 6. Do you like to sing? | Yes ... No... | 6. I (don't) like to sing. |
| 7. Do you like to dance? | Yes ... No... | 7. I (don't) like to dance. |
| 8. Do you like to earn money? | Yes ... No... | 8. I (don't) like to earn a lot. |
| 9. Do you like to spend money? | Yes ... No... | 9. I (don't) like to spend a lot of money. |
| 10. Do you like to drive in México? | Yes ... No... | 10. I (don't) like to drive in Mexico. |
| 11. Do you like to watch television? | Yes ... No... | 11. I (don't) like to watch it (<i>f</i>) at night. |
| 12. Do you like to write letters? | Yes ... No... | 12. I (don't) like to write them (<i>f</i>). |
| 13. Do you like to go to the movie theatre? | Yes ... No... | 13. I (don't) like to go to there on Sundays. |
| 14. What kind of music do you like to listen to? | | 14. I like to listen to Mexican music. |
| 15. What do you like to drink in the morning? | | 15. I like to drink coffee with cream and sugar. |
| 16. What do you like to do? | | 16. I like to do a lot of things. |
| 17. Which sport do you like to play? | | 17. I like to play tennis. |
| 18. What instrument do you like to play? | | 18. I like to play the guitar. |
| 19. What time do you like to study Spanish? | | 19. I like to study at 9 in the morning. |
| 20. When do you like to work ? | | 20. I like to work Monday through Friday. |
| 21. When do you like to read? | | 21. I like to read before sleeping. |
| 22. (To) where do you like to travel? | | 22. I like to travel to Mexico. |
| 23. (To) Where do you like to walk? | | 23. I like to walk to downtown. |
| 24. Where do you like to live in México? | | 24. I like to live in San Miguel. |

Vocabulary quiz



Quiz yourself on the vocabulary you just studied. **answers on page 49**



54 possible

- wrong

 total score

If you got 43 correct, congratulations!
Retest yourself on the items you missed.

1. I like _____
2. you like _____
3. to leave _____
4. to arrive _____
5. to write _____
6. to forget _____
7. to bring _____
8. to give _____
9. to learn _____
10. to understand _____
11. to live _____
12. to rest _____
13. to put _____
14. to lose _____
15. to see _____
16. to know _____
17. to move (something) _____
18. to go up _____
19. to wear, carry _____
20. to sign _____
21. to follow _____
22. to recommend _____
23. to ask for _____
24. to say _____
25. the number _____
26. the candies _____
27. the flowerpot _____
28. the film _____
29. the history _____
30. the table _____
31. the chairs _____
32. the stairs _____
33. the shoes _____
34. the contract _____
35. the boys _____
36. the restaurant _____
37. the man _____
38. the woman _____
39. the room _____
40. the meat _____
41. everything _____
42. the exercises _____
43. the music _____
44. the movie theatre _____
45. the sport _____
46. the instrument _____
47. the cream _____
48. the sugar _____
49. things _____
50. downtown _____
51. under _____
52. Monday through Friday _____
53. every day _____
54. what kind of? _____


P

This is the vocabulary that will be used in the following section.

Study it, highlight difficult words, then do the exercises on the next pages.

1. tiene que	you have to	30. su/mi ropa	your/my clothes
2. tengo que.....	I have to	31. el periódico	the newspaper
3. gastar	to spend	32. mi lección.....	my lesson
4. lavar	to wash	33. mi hijo	my son
5. pensar	to think	34. el cambio	[the] change
6. cerrar	to close	35. calor	heat
7. cambiar.....	to change	36. un teléfono	a telephone
8. buscar	to look for	37. años	years
9. hablar	to speak	38. hambre	hunger
10. recordar.....	to remember	39. prisa	hurry
11. limpiar.....	to clean	40. los boletos	the tickets
12. leer	to read	41. sed	thirst
13. conseguir.....	to get	42. tiempo	time
14. descansar	to rest	43. miedo	fear
15. contestar	to answer	44. sueño	sleepiness, dream
16. llegar	to arrive	45. café o té	coffee or tea
17. salir.....	to leave	46. recados	messages
18. comer	to eat	47. llamadas	calls
19. estar	to be	48. gente	people
20. viajar.....	to travel	49. estudiantes	students
21. vivir	to live	50. instrucciones	instructions
22. traer	to bring	51. una reservación	a reservation
23. ganar	to earn, win	52. cebollas	onions
24. vender	to sell	53. tren	train
25. dejar	to leave behind	54. flores	flowers
26. caminar.....	to walk	55. dólares	dollars
27. dormir.....	to sleep	56. páginas	pages
28. pasar.....	to pass	57. con quién	with whom
29. hay	there is/there are	58. para.....	for

Do you have to? = ¿Tiene que?

tener que	
tengo que	tenemos
tienes que	
tiene que	tienen que

Note that *tiene* ends with an **e**, indicating 'you have (to)' (*formal*).

When **que** is added to **tener**, it makes the expression *tener que* = 'to have to'

Tener que is followed by an infinitive ('to' form of a verb), e.g. *¿Tiene que ir?* = Do you have to go?

Ropa = clothes (see #2)

Ropa is always singular, as in 'clothing.'
It is a collective term.

QUIÉN = who

CON QUIÉN = with whom (see #24a)



answers on page 60

1. Do you have to spend less money? *¿Tiene que gastar menos dinero?* _____
2. Do you have to wash your clothes? _____ su ropa
3. Do you have to think about it (*m*)? _____
4. Do you have to close the door? _____
5. Do you have to exchange your money? _____
6. Do you have to look for a bank? _____
7. Do you have to use the restroom? _____
8. Do you have to remember the address? _____ la dirección
9. Do you have to clean the bathroom? _____
10. What do you have to read every morning? _____
11. When do you have to study? _____
12. What do you have to prepare? _____
13. What do you have to get in the market? _____ en el mercado
14. When do you have to rest? _____
15. When do you have to answer the letter? _____
16. At what time do you have to arrive? _____
17. At what time do you have to leave? _____
18. When do you have to return? _____
19. When do you have to finish? _____
20. When do you have to work? _____
21. What time do you have to eat? _____
22. When do you have to be there? _____
23. To where do you have to go? _____
24. With whom do you have to speak? _____ con quién

tener que	
tengo que	tenemos
tienes que	
tiene que	tienen que

I have to = Tengo que

59

Note that *tengo* ends with an **o**, indicating 'I have (to).'



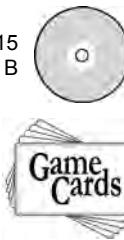
answers on page 60

1. I have to spend less. *Tengo que gastar menos.*
2. I have to wash it (*f*). _____
3. I have to think about it (*m*) a little more. _____ un poco más
4. I have to close it (*f*). _____
5. I have to exchange it (*m*) as soon as possible. _____ cuanto antes
6. I have to look for one (*m*). _____
7. I have to use it (*m*). _____
8. I have to remember it (*f*). _____
9. I have to clean it (*m*). _____
10. I have to read the newspaper every morning. _____ el periódico
11. I have to study every day. _____
12. I have to prepare my lesson. _____ mi lección
13. I have to get a gift for my son. _____ para mi hijo
14. I have to rest tonight before the party. _____
15. I have to answer it (*f*) today. _____
16. I have to arrive at 3 o'clock. _____ a las tres
17. I have to leave at 11 o'clock. _____ a las once
18. I have to return early in the morning. _____ temprano en la mañana
19. I have to finish as soon as possible. _____ cuanto antes
20. I have to work tomorrow before playing tennis. _____
21. I have to eat before 6 o'clock. _____ antes de las seis
22. I have to be there tomorrow. _____ allí
23. I have to go to the bank. _____
24. I have to speak with my wife. _____

¿Tiene que? - Tengo que



Disc 1 track 15
Cassette 1 side B



THESE ARE THE 5-POINT
QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS
ON YOUR LIGHTBLUE CARDS

Use the questions and answers as a spoken exercise.

Answer with *sí* or *no* as appropriate.

Work with the recording, a partner, or alone.

Focus on your pronunciation.

A

for page 58

for page 59

- | | | |
|---|---------------|--|
| 1. ¿Tiene que gastar menos dinero? | Sí...No,no... | 1. Tengo que gastar menos. |
| 2. ¿Tiene que lavar su ropa? | Sí...No,no... | 2. Tengo que lavarla. |
| 3. ¿Tiene que pensarla? | Sí...No,no... | 3. Tengo que pensarla un poco más. |
| 4. ¿Tiene que cerrar la puerta? | Sí...No,no... | 4. Tengo que cerrarla. |
| 5. ¿Tiene que cambiar su dinero? | Sí...No,no... | 5. Tengo que cambiarlo cuanto antes. |
| 6. ¿Tiene que buscar un banco? | Sí...No,no... | 6. Tengo que buscar uno. |
| 7. ¿Tiene que usar el baño? | Sí...No,no... | 7. Tengo que usarlo. |
| 8. ¿Tiene que recordar la dirección? | Sí...No,no... | 8. Tengo que recordarla. |
| 9. ¿Tiene que limpiar el baño? | Sí...No,no... | 9. Tengo que limpiarlo. |
| 10. ¿Qué tiene que leer cada mañana? | | 10. Tengo que leer el periódico cada mañana. |
| 11. ¿Cuándo tiene que estudiar? | | 11. Tengo que estudiar cada día. |
| 12. ¿Qué tiene que preparar? | | 12. Tengo que preparar mi lección. |
| 13. ¿Qué tiene que conseguir en el mercado? | | 13. Tengo que conseguir un regalo para mi hijo. |
| 14. ¿Cuándo tiene que descansar? | | 14. Tengo que descansar esta noche antes de la fiesta. |
| 15. ¿Cuándo tiene que contestar la carta? | | 15. Tengo que contestarla hoy. |
| 16. ¿A qué hora tiene que llegar? | | 16. Tengo que llegar a las tres. |
| 17. ¿A qué hora tiene que salir? | | 17. Tengo que salir a las once. |
| 18. ¿Cuándo tiene que regresar? | | 18. Tengo que regresar temprano en la mañana. |
| 19. ¿Cuándo tiene que terminar? | | 19. Tengo que terminar cuanto antes. |
| 20. ¿Cuándo tiene que trabajar? | | 20. Tengo que trabajar mañana antes de jugar tenis. |
| 21. ¿A qué hora tiene que comer? | | 21. Tengo que comer antes de las seis. |
| 22. ¿Cuándo tiene que estar allí? | | 22. Tengo que estar allí mañana. |
| 23. ¿Adónde tiene que ir? | | 23. Tengo que ir al banco. |
| 24. ¿Con quién tiene que hablar? | | 24. Tengo que hablar con mi esposa. |



This is the English version of the questions and answers on the preceding page.
Translate them into Spanish orally until you can do it easily.
Highlight the words that give you problems.

ES

answers on previous page

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Do you have to spend less money? | Yes...No... 1. I (don't) have to spend less. |
| 2. Do you have to wash your clothes? | Yes...No... 2. I (don't) have to wash it. |
| 3. Do you have to think about it (<i>m</i>)? | Yes...No... 3. I (don't) have to think about it (<i>m</i>) a little more. |
| 4. Do you have to close the door? | Yes...No... 4. I (don't) have to close it (<i>f</i>). |
| 5. Do you have to exchange your money? | Yes...No... 5. I have to exchange it (<i>m</i>) as soon as possible. |
| 6. Do you have to look for a bank? | Yes...No... 6. I (don't) have to look for one (<i>m</i>). |
| 7. Do you have to use the restroom? | Yes...No... 7. I (don't) have to use it. |
| 8. Do you have to remember the address? | Yes...No... 8. I (don't) have to remember it (<i>f</i>). |
| 9. Do you have to clean the bathroom? | Yes...No... 9. I have to clean it. |
| 10. What do you have to read every morning? | 10. I have to read the newspaper every morning. |
| 11. When do you have to study? | 11. I have to study every day. |
| 12. What do you have to prepare? | 12. I have to prepare my lesson. |
| 13. What do you have to get in the market? | 13. I have to get a gift for my son. |
| 14. When do you have to rest? | 14. I have to rest tonight before the party. |
| 15. When do you have to answer the letter? | 15. I have to answer it (<i>f</i>) today. |
| 16. At what time do you have to arrive? | 16. I have to arrive at 3 o'clock. |
| 17. At what time do you have to leave? | 17. I have to leave at 11 o'clock. |
| 18. When do you have to return? | 18. I have to return early in the morning. |
| 19. When do you have to finish? | 19. I have to finish as soon as possible. |
| 20. When do you have to work? | 20. I have to work tomorrow before playing tennis. |
| 21. At what time do you have to eat? | 21. I have to eat before 6 o'clock. |
| 22. When do you have to be there? | 22. I have to be there tomorrow. |
| 23. To where do you have to go? | 23. I have to go to the bank. |
| 24. With whom do you have to speak? | 24. I have to speak with my wife. |

Uses of tener

TENER = to have

Tener is one of the most common verbs in the Spanish language. It has four basic usages:

- 1) To indicate possession:

<i>Tengo muchos amigos.</i>	= I have many friends.
<i>Tengo muy poco dinero.</i>	= I have very little money.

- 2) To express 'to have to' — tener que + infinitive:

<i>Tengo que salir ahora.</i>	= I have to leave now.
-------------------------------	------------------------

- 3) To express age, I have XX years:

<i>¿Cuántos años tiene? Tengo 20 años.</i>	= How old are you? I am twenty years old.
--	---

- 4) In certain idiomatic expressions we say 'I have ____' instead of 'I am ____.'

<i>Tengo (mucho) calor, ... frío</i>	= I am (very) hot, ... cold.
<i>Tengo (mucha) hambre, ... sed.</i>	= I am (very) hungry, ... thirsty.
<i>Tengo (mucho) sueño.</i>	= I am (very) sleepy.
<i>Tengo (mucha) prisa.</i>	= I am in a (big) hurry.
<i>Tengo (mucho) miedo.</i>	= I am (very) afraid.



answers on page 64

1. Do you have change? _____ cambio

No, I don't have change. _____

2. Are you hot? _____

Yes, I'm very hot. _____

3. Do you have a phone? _____ teléfono

Yes, I have a phone. _____

4. How old are you? _____

I'm forty years old. _____ cuarenta años

5. When do you have to go? _____

I have to go today. _____

6. Are you hungry? _____

Yes, I'm hungry. _____

7. Are you in a hurry right now? _____

No, I'm not in a hurry. _____

8. How many tickets do you have? _____ boletos

I have three. _____

9. Are you thirsty? _____

Yes, I'm very thirsty. _____

10. Do you have time? _____

Yes, I have time. _____

HAY = There is

HAY = 'There is — There are,' or 'Is there? — Are there?'

This magic word is pronounced 'EYE' and it does wonders when you want something.

¿Hay café?

Is there coffee?

Sí, hay.

Yes, there is.

No, no hay.

No, there isn't.

¿Hay manzanas?

Are there apples?

Sí, hay.

Yes, there are.

No, no hay.

No, there aren't.

¿Cuántos hay?

How many are there?

Hay cinco.

There are five.

Recado vs. mensaje (see #3)

Un recado is a message that is left behind with a third party or answering machine.

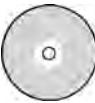
Un mensaje is a message that is delivered to someone personally.



answers on page 64

1. Is there coffee? _____ café
No, there isn't. _____
2. Is there enough time? _____ suficiente tiempo
Yes, there is. _____
3. Are there messages? _____ recados
Yes, there are three. _____
4. Are there calls for me? _____ llamadas
No, there aren't. _____
5. Are there a lot of people there? _____ gente allí
Yes, there are. _____
6. How many students are there? _____
There are twenty. _____
7. Are there instructions? _____ instrucciones
Yes, there are. _____
8. Is there a reservation for Mr. Smith? _____ reservación
Yes, there is one. _____
9. How many chairs are there? _____
There are six. _____
10. Is there a ticket for Jose? _____ un boleto
No, there isn't. _____

Uses of tener, hay


A
[to page 62](#)

As a spoken exercise translate the Spanish column into English, then the English column into Spanish.

1. ¿Tiene cambio? No, no tengo cambio.
2. ¿Tiene calor? Sí, tengo mucho calor.
3. ¿Tiene un teléfono?
Sí, tengo un teléfono.
4. ¿Cuántos años tiene?
Tengo cuarenta años.
5. ¿Cuándo tiene que ir?
Tengo que ir hoy.
6. ¿Tiene hambre?
Sí, tengo hambre.
7. ¿Tiene prisa ahorita?
No, no tengo prisa.
8. ¿Cuántos boletos tiene?
Tengo tres.
9. ¿Tiene sed? Sí, tengo mucha sed.
10. ¿Tiene tiempo? Sí, tengo tiempo.

1. Do you have change? I don't have change.
2. Are you hot? Yes, I'm very hot.
3. Do you have a telephone?
Yes, I have a telephone.
4. How old are you?
I'm forty years old.
5. When do you have to go?
I have to go today.
6. Are you hungry?
Yes, I'm hungry.
7. Are you in a hurry right now?
No, I'm not in a hurry.
8. How many tickets do you have?
I have three.
9. Are you thirsty? Yes, I'm very thirsty.
10. Do you have time? Yes, I have time.

A
[to page 63](#)

1. ¿Hay café?
No, no hay.
2. ¿Hay suficiente tiempo?
Sí, hay.
3. ¿Hay recados?
Sí, hay tres.
4. ¿Hay llamadas para mí?
No, no hay.
5. ¿Hay mucha gente allí?
Sí, hay.
6. ¿Cuántos estudiantes hay?
Hay veinte.
7. ¿Hay instrucciones?
Sí, hay.
8. ¿Hay una reservación para el Señor Smith?
Sí, hay una.
9. ¿Cuántas sillas hay?
Hay seis.
10. ¿Hay un boleto para José?
No, no hay.

1. Is there coffee?
No, there isn't.
2. Is there enough time?
Yes, there is.
3. Are there messages?
Yes, there are three.
4. Are there calls for me?
No, there aren't any.
5. Are there a lot of people there?
Yes, there are.
6. How many students are there?
There are twenty.
7. Are there instructions?
Yes, there are.
8. Is there a reservation for Mr. Smith?
Yes, there is one.
9. How many chairs are there?
There are six.
10. Is there a ticket for Jose?
No, there isn't.

Por and *para* can both mean *for* but they have different uses.

Here is a simple explanation that works most of the time. Later we will study other uses.

POR = T.T.M.T.

generally refers to **THROUGH, TIME, MONEY, TRANSPORTATION: T.T.M.T.**

THROUGH

Voy por el parque. = I'm going **through** the park.

TIME

Necesito trabajar por dos horas. = I need to work **for** two hours.

Voy a viajar por dos meses. = I'm going to travel **for** two months.

MONEY OR QUANTITY

Quiero comprarlo por mil pesos. = I want to buy it **for** a thousand pesos.

Voy a venderlo por veinte dólares. = I'm going sell it **for** twenty dollars.

TRANSPORTATION: by

Me gusta viajar por avión. = I like to travel **by** airplane.

PARA = I.I.D.D.

generally means **INTENDED FOR** or **IN ORDER TO**.

INTENDED FOR SOMEONE:

<i>El dinero es</i>	<i>para mí.</i>	= The money is	for me.
	<i>para tí.</i>	=	for you (familiar)
	<i>para él, ella, Ud.</i>	=	for him, for her, for you
	<i>para nosotros</i>	=	for us
	<i>para ellos, ellas, Uds.</i>	=	for them (m, f), for you all

INTENDED FOR SOMETHING:

La crema es *para el café.* = The cream is **for the coffee.**

La llave es *para la casa.* = The key is **for the house.**

IN ORDER TO

Necesito estudiar **para hablar español.** = I need to study **in order to speak Spanish.**

Necesito salir ahora **para llegar a tiempo.** = I need leave now **in order to arrive on time.**

DESTINATION

Voy a salir **para México mañana.** = I'm going to leave **for Mexico tomorrow.**

El autobús **para Chiapas** *va a salir ahora.* = The bus **for Chiapas** is going to leave now.

DEADLINE

Es **para mañana.** = It's **for** tomorrow.

Tengo que hacerlo **para el domingo.** = I have to do it **for** Sunday.

Por vs. para

POR = T.T.M.T.

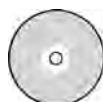
1. Through
2. Time
3. Money
4. Transportation

PARA = I.I.D.D.

5. Intended for
6. In order to
7. Destination
8. Deadline

Fill in the correct form of *por* or *para*, then translate the sentence and indicate the reason for using por or para by referring to the numbers above.
answers on next page

- | | | |
|---|---|-------------|
| 1. Voy a salir <u>por</u> dos horas. | 1. <u>I'm going to leave for two hours.</u> | 1. <u>2</u> |
| 2. Necesito cebollas _____ la sopa. | 2. _____ | 2. _____ |
| 3. Voy a viajar _____ tren. | 3. _____ | 3. _____ |
| 4. Quiero vivir en México _____ dos años. | 4. _____ | 4. _____ |
| 5. Me gusta traer flores _____ María. | 5. _____ | 5. _____ |
| 6. Tengo que comprar un regalo _____ mi hija. | 6. _____ | 6. _____ |
| 7. Voy a cambiar dólares _____ pesos. | 7. _____ | 7. _____ |
| 8. Necesito ganar más dinero _____ pagar mis cuentas. | 8. _____ | 8. _____ |
| 9. Tengo que salir _____ los Estados Unidos pronto. | 9. _____ | 9. _____ |
| 10. Tengo que terminarlo _____ mañana. | 10. _____ | 10. _____ |
| 11. Quiero venderlas _____ ocho pesos. | 11. _____ | 11. _____ |
| 12. Tengo que trabajar _____ dos semanas más. | 12. _____ | 12. _____ |
| 13. Voy a dejar mi bolsa aquí _____ ahora. | 13. _____ | 13. _____ |
| 14. Este libro es _____ usted. | 14. _____ | 14. _____ |
| 15. Me gusta leer veinte páginas _____ día. | 15. _____ | 15. _____ |
| 16. Quiero dejar un recado _____ Juan. | 16. _____ | 16. _____ |
| 17. Me gusta caminar _____ el parque. | 17. _____ | 17. _____ |
| 18. Tengo que dormir _____ ocho horas. | 18. _____ | 18. _____ |
| 19. Tengo que pasar _____ el centro para llegar a mi oficina. | 19. _____ | 19. _____ |
| 20. Necesito limpiar la cocina _____ esta noche. | 20. _____ | 20. _____ |



A

answers to previous page

As a spoken exercise translate the Spanish column into English,
then the English column into Spanish.

1. Voy a salir **por** dos horas.
2. Necesito cebollas **para** la sopa.
3. Voy a viajar **por** tren.
4. Quiero vivir en México **por** dos años.
5. Me gusta traer flores **para** María.
6. Tengo que comprar un regalo **para** mi hija.
7. Voy a cambiar dólares **por** pesos.
8. Necesito ganar más dinero **para** pagar mis cuentas.
9. Tengo que salir **para** los Estados Unidos pronto.
10. Tengo que terminarlo **para** mañana.
11. Quiero venderlas **por** ocho pesos.
12. Tengo que trabajar **por** dos semanas más.
13. Voy a dejar mi bolsa aquí **por** ahora.
14. Este libro es **para** usted.
15. Me gusta leer veinte páginas **por** día.
16. Quiero dejar un recado **para** Juan.
17. Me gusta caminar **por** el parque.
18. Tengo que dormir **por** ocho horas .
19. Tengo que pasar **por** el centro para llegar a mi oficina.
20. Necesito limpiar la cocina **para** esta noche.

1. I'm going to leave for two hours. 2
2. I need onions for the soup. 5
3. I'm going to travel by train. 4
4. I want to live in Mexico for two years. 2
5. I like to bring flowers for María. 5
6. I have to buy a gift for my daughter. 5
7. I'm going to change dollars for pesos. 3
8. I need to earn more money in order to pay my bills. 6
9. I have to leave for the United States soon. 7
10. I have to finish it for tomorrow. 8
11. I want to sell them (*f*) for eight pesos. 3
12. I have to work for two more weeks. 2
13. I'm going to leave my bag here for now. 2
14. This book is for you. 5
15. I like to read twenty pages per day. 2
16. I want to leave a message for Juan. 5
17. I like to walk through the park. 1
18. I have to sleep for eight hours. 2
19. I have to pass through downtown in order to arrive at my office. 1
20. I need to clean the kitchen for tonight. 8

Vocabulary quiz



Quiz yourself on the vocabulary you just studied. **answers on page 57**



58 possible

- wrong

 total score

If you got 46 correct, congratulations!
Retest yourself on the items you missed.

1. you have to _____
2. I have to _____
3. to spend _____
4. to wash _____
5. to think _____
6. to close _____
7. to change _____
8. to look for _____
9. to speak _____
10. to remember _____
11. to clean _____
12. to read _____
13. to get _____
14. to rest _____
15. to answer _____
16. to arrive _____
17. to leave, go out _____
18. to eat _____
19. to be (location) _____
20. to travel _____
21. to live _____
22. to bring _____
23. to earn, win _____
24. to sell _____
25. to leave behind _____
26. to walk _____
27. to sleep _____
28. to pass _____
29. there is/there are _____
30. your/my clothes _____
31. the newspaper _____
32. my lesson _____
33. my son _____
34. [the] change _____
35. heat _____
36. a telephone _____
37. years _____
38. hunger _____
39. hurry _____
40. [the] tickets _____
41. thirst _____
42. time _____
43. fear _____
44. sleepiness, dream _____
45. coffee or tea _____
46. messages _____
47. calls _____
48. people _____
49. students _____
50. instructions _____
51. a reservation _____
52. onions _____
53. train _____
54. flowers _____
55. dollars _____
56. pages _____
57. with whom _____
58. for _____

Section IV

POWER VERBS REVIEW

‘I’ and ‘You’ (formal)

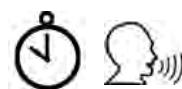
Power verbs integration quiz

'I' and 'you' (formal)



answers on next page

1. I need _____
2. You need _____
3. I want _____
4. You want _____
5. I'm going to _____
6. You're going to _____
7. I can _____
8. You can _____
9. I have to _____
10. You have to _____
11. I like _____
12. You like _____
13. You want _____
14. I need _____
15. I'm going to _____
16. You have to _____
17. I want _____
18. I like _____
19. You need _____
20. I have to _____
21. You're going to _____
22. I can _____
23. You need _____
24. I'm going to _____
25. You like _____
26. I need _____
27. I want _____
28. You have to _____
29. You can _____
30. You need _____
31. I need _____
32. You want _____
33. I like _____
34. I can _____
35. I have to _____
36. I want _____
37. I'm going to _____
38. You can _____
39. You're going to _____
40. You like _____
41. I need _____
42. You have to _____
43. You need _____
44. I'm going to _____
45. I like _____
46. I have to _____
47. I'm going to _____
48. You want _____



'I AND 'YOU' (UD.) FORMS

This is a timed exercise. Set your clock for three minutes.
Translate from English to Spanish.

1. I need	Necesito	25. You like	Le gusta
2. You need	Necesita	26. I need	Necesito
3. I want	Quiero	27. I want	Quiero
4. You want	Quiere	28. You have to	Tiene que
5. I'm going to	Voy a	29. You can	Puede
6. You're going to	Va a	30. You need	Necesita
7. I can	Puedo	31. I need	Necesito
8. You can	Puede	32. You want	Quiere
9. I have to	Tengo que	33. I like	Me gusta
10. You have to	Tiene que	34. I can	Puedo
11. I like	Me gusta	35. I have to	Tengo que
12. You like	Le gusta	36. I want	Quiero
13. You want	Quiere	37. I'm going to	Voy a
14. I need	Necesito	38. You can	Puede
15. I'm going to	Voy a	39. You're going to	Va a
16. You have to	Tiene que	40. You like	Le gusta
17. I want	Quiero	41. I need	Necesito
18. I like	Me gusta	42. You have to	Tiene que
19. You need	Necesita	43. You need	Necesita
20. I have to	Tengo que	44. I'm going to	Voy a
21. You're going to	Va a	45. I like	Me gusta
22. I can	Puedo	46. I have to	Tengo que
23. You need	Necesita	47. I'm going to	Voy a
24. I'm going to	Voy a	48. You want	Quiere

Common verbs quiz

S>E

answers on next page



8 9 possible

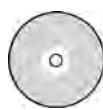
- _____ wrong

_____ total score

If you got 71 correct, congratulations!
Retest yourself on the items you missed.

1. creer _____
2. llenar _____
3. tratar (de) _____
4. cocinar _____
5. estar _____
6. vivir _____
7. llevar _____
8. esperar _____
9. limpiar _____
10. leer _____
11. bailar _____
12. mandar _____
13. decidir _____
14. firmar _____
15. entender _____
16. manejar _____
17. comer _____
18. necesitar _____
19. ordenar _____
20. visitar _____
21. ir _____
22. pagar _____
23. lavar _____
24. usar _____
25. mover _____
26. seguir _____
27. pasar (por) _____
28. arreglar _____
29. venir _____
30. pensar (en) _____
31. conocer _____
32. caminar _____
33. abrir _____
34. platicar _____
35. ser _____
36. invitar _____
37. empezar _____
38. oír _____
39. tocar _____
40. preguntar _____
41. cerrar _____
42. traer _____
43. gastar _____
44. preparar _____

45. dejar (de) _____
46. pedir _____
47. presentar _____
48. salir _____
49. comprar _____
50. estudiar _____
51. aprender _____
52. probar _____
53. hablar _____
54. subir _____
55. encontrar _____
56. jugar _____
57. perder _____
58. escribir _____
59. quitar _____
60. ayudar _____
61. vender _____
62. cantar _____
63. poner _____
64. conseguir _____
65. descansar _____
66. buscar _____
67. dormir _____
68. recomendar _____
69. llegar _____
70. recordar _____
71. recibir _____
72. bajar _____
73. regresar _____
74. ver _____
75. sacar _____
76. contestar _____
77. terminar _____
78. ganar _____
79. correr _____
80. tomar _____
81. dar _____
82. trabajar _____
83. cambiar _____
84. decir _____
85. viajar _____
86. saber _____
87. olvidar _____
88. hacer _____
89. escuchar _____



A

As a spoken exercise translate the Spanish column into English,
then the English column into Spanish.
answers to previous page

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. creer | to believe | 45. dejar (de) | to leave behind, (w/ de) quit |
| 2. llenar | to fill | 46. pedir | to ask for |
| 3. tratar (de) | to try (to) | 47. presentar | to introduce |
| 4. cocinar | to cook | 48. salir | to leave, go out |
| 5. estar | to be (feelings - location) | 49. comprar | to buy |
| 6. vivir | to live | 50. estudiar | to study |
| 7. llevar | to carry, wear | 51. aprender | to learn |
| 8. esperar | to wait (for), hope, expect | 52. probar | to test, taste |
| 9. limpiar | to clean | 53. hablar | to speak |
| 10. leer | to read | 54. subir | to go up, get into (a vehicle) |
| 11. bailar | to dance | 55. encontrar | to find, encounter |
| 12. mandar | to mail, send | 56. jugar | to play (a sport or game) |
| 13. decidir | to decide | 57. perder | to lose |
| 14. firmar | to sign | 58. escribir | to write |
| 15. entender | to understand | 59. quitar | to remove |
| 16. manejar | to drive, manage | 60. ayudar | to help |
| 17. comer | to eat | 61. vender | to sell |
| 18. necesitar | to need | 62. cantar | to sing |
| 19. ordenar | to order | 63. poner | to put |
| 20. visitar | to visit | 64. conseguir | to get, obtain |
| 21. ir | to go | 65. descansar | to rest |
| 22. pagar | to pay | 66. buscar | to look for |
| 23. lavar | to wash | 67. dormir | to sleep |
| 24. usar | to use | 68. recomendar | to recommend |
| 25. mover | to move (something) | 69. llegar | to arrive |
| 26. seguir | to follow | 70. recordar | to remember |
| 27. pasar (por) | to pass (by), happen, spend (time) | 71. recibir | to receive |
| 28. arreglar | to fix, arrange | 72. bajar | to lower, get out (of a vehicle) |
| 29. venir | to come | 73. regresar | to return |
| 30. pensar (en) | to think (about) | 74. ver | to see, watch |
| 31. conocer | to know, meet (person or place) | 75. sacar | to take out, take (a photo) |
| 32. caminar | to walk | 76. contestar | to answer |
| 33. abrir | to open | 77. terminar | to finish, terminate |
| 34. platicar | to chat | 78. ganar | to earn, win |
| 35. ser | to be (permanent) | 79. correr | to run, flow |
| 36. invitar | to invite | 80. tomar | to drink, take (mode of transport) |
| 37. empezar | to start, begin | 81. dar | to give |
| 38. oír | to hear | 82. trabajar | to work |
| 39. tocar | to play (an instrument), touch | 83. cambiar | to change, exchange |
| 40. preguntar | to ask, question | 84. decir | to say, tell |
| 41. cerrar | to close | 85. viajar | to travel |
| 42. traer | to bring | 86. saber | to know (information) |
| 43. gastar | to spend, waste | 87. olvidar | to forget |
| 44. preparar | to prepare | 88. hacer | to do, make |
| | | 89. escuchar | to listen to |

Power verbs review

answers on next page

1. ¿Cuándo necesita cambiar su dinero? _____
Necesito cambiar mi dinero hoy. _____
2. ¿Qué necesita pagar? _____
Necesito pagar la cuenta. _____
3. ¿Puede encontrar el libro? _____
No puedo encontrarlo. _____
4. ¿Va a arreglar su coche? _____
Sí, voy a arreglarlo hoy. _____
5. ¿Qué va a firmar? _____
Voy a firmar la cuenta. _____
6. ¿Qué quiere comer? _____
Quiero comer huevos rancheros. _____
7. ¿Adónde quiere ir? _____
Quiero ir al mercado. _____
8. ¿Qué va a hacer hoy? _____
Voy a estudiar por dos horas. _____
9. ¿Cuándo tiene que salir para México? _____
Tengo que salir en la mañana después de* comer. _____
10. ¿Cuándo quiere regresar? _____
Quiero regresar pronto. _____
11. ¿Cuánto puede pagar por el regalo? _____
No puedo pagar mucho. _____
12. ¿Cuándo va a cambiar su dinero? _____
Voy a cambiarlo en la mañana. _____
13. ¿Va a leer la carta ahora? _____
Sí, voy a leerla. _____
14. ¿Cuándo puede hacerlo para mí? _____
Puedo hacerlo mañana después de trabajar. _____
15. ¿Necesita descansar? _____
Sí, necesito descansar (por) una hora. _____

* Refer to page 31 to review después de and antes de



answers on previous page

1. When do you need to change your money? _____
I need to exchange my money today. _____
2. What do you need to pay? _____
I need to pay the bill. _____
3. Can you find the book? _____
I can't find it (m). _____
4. Are you going to fix your car? _____
I'm going to fix it today. _____
5. What are you going to sign? _____
I'm going to sign the bill. _____
6. What do you want to eat? _____
I want to eat ranch eggs. _____
7. (To) where do you want to go? _____
I want to go to the market. _____
8. What are you going to do today? _____
I'm going to study for two hours. _____
9. When do you have to leave for Mexico? _____
I have to leave in the morning after eating. _____
10. When do you want to return? _____
I want to return soon. _____
11. How much can you pay for the gift? _____
I can't pay a lot. _____
12. When are you going to exchange your money? _____
I'm going to exchange it in the morning. _____
13. Are you going to read the letter now? _____
Yes, I'm going to read it. _____
14. When can you do it for me? _____
I can do it tomorrow after working. _____
15. Do you need to rest? _____
Yes, I need to rest (for) an hour. _____

Power verbs review



answers on page 79

1. What time do you need to work? _____

I need to work tomorrow at 8:00. _____.

2. How much do you want to earn? _____

I want to earn 500 pesos per month. _____ quinientos pesos por mes

3. To where are you going to travel? _____

I'm going to travel to Mexico. _____

4. Do you want to drive your car? _____

Yes, I want to drive it. _____

5. What do you like to cook? _____

I like to cook Chinese food. _____

6. Where can you exchange your money? _____

I can exchange it in the bank. _____

7. When do you need to prepare it? _____

I need to prepare it now. _____

8. When do you have to answer the letter? _____

I have to answer it before Saturday. _____

9. Are you going to close the store early? _____

Yes, I'm going to close it early. _____

10. Do you want to buy a gift? _____

Yes, I want to buy one. _____

11. Can you play tennis very well? _____

No, I can't play very well. _____

12. Are you going to go to the store now? _____

No, I'm not going to go now. _____

13. Do you need to think about it (*m*) a little more? _____ un poco más

Yes, I need to think about it a little more. _____

14. What do you want to drink? _____

I want to drink a cold beer. _____

15. What time are you going to quit working? _____

I'm going to quit working at 5 o'clock. _____

16. When do you have to pay the bill? _____

I have to pay it next week. _____ la próxima semana



answers on page 80

17. What time do you want to leave (from) the office? _____ (de) la oficina
I want to leave at 5:00. _____
18. Are you going to ask for the bill? _____
Yes, I'm going to ask for it now. _____
19. Can you sell your products in Mexico? _____
Yes, I can sell them here. _____
20. Where do you want to sleep tonight? _____
I want to sleep in the hotel. _____
21. Do you like to write letters? _____
No, I don't like to write them. _____
22. Do you have to run every day? _____
Yes, I have to run every day. _____
23. Do you want to see a movie? _____ la película
Yes, I want to see one. _____
24. Where do you want to live next year? _____ el próximo año
I want to live in Cancún. _____
25. Can you understand me? _____
No, I can't understand you (m). _____
26. When are you going to learn Spanish? _____
I'm going to learn Spanish this year. _____
27. What do you like to eat in the morning? _____
I like to eat fruit and toast. _____ fruta y pan tostado
28. Do you want to go out with me? _____
Yes, I want to go out with you. _____
29. Can you believe it? _____
No, I can't believe it. _____
30. Do you need to see a doctor? _____ un doctor
No, I don't need to see one (m). _____
31. When do you have to receive the check? _____ el cheque
I have to receive it before next week. _____
32. Where are you going to get on the bus? _____
I'm going to get on here. _____
33. How long do you like to sleep? _____ ¿Cuánto tiempo
I like to sleep (for) eight hours. _____

Power verbs review



answers on page 81

34. What do you want to read? _____

I want to read this book. _____

35. Can you follow Juan? _____ la conversación

Yes, I can follow him. _____

36. Can you go with me tomorrow morning? _____

Yes, I can go with you. _____

37. Where do you have to be tomorrow? _____

I have to be in class. _____

38. Where do you want to put the fruit? _____

I want to put it in the kitchen. _____ en la cocina

39. When can you get tickets for the movie? _____ boletos

I can get them on Sunday. _____

40. What do you like to do in the afternoons? _____ en las tardes

I like to play with the children. _____

41. Can you hear me? _____

Yes, I can hear you (m). _____

42. Are you going to go to the party? _____

Yes, but I'm going to go a little late. _____ un poco tarde

43. What do you need to bring for the party? _____

I need to bring a bottle of wine. _____ botella

44. When do you have to know? _____

I have to know as soon as possible. _____

45. Do you want to meet my wife? _____

Yes, I want to meet her. _____

46. When are you going to have time (in order to) to study? _____ para estudiar

I'm going to have time tonight. _____

47. Do you want to be my friend (m)? _____

Yes, I want to be your friend. _____

48. Do you want to go to the party with me? _____

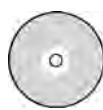
Yes, I want to go with you. _____

49. Can you do it today? _____

Yes, I can do it. _____

50. Do you have to come early? _____

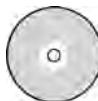
No, I don't have to come early. _____

**A****to page 76**

As a spoken exercise translate the Spanish column into English,
then the English column into Spanish.

1. ¿A qué hora necesita trabajar?
Necesito trabajar mañana a las ocho.
2. ¿Cuánto quiere ganar?
Quiero ganar quinientos pesos por mes.
3. ¿Adónde va a viajar?
Voy a viajar a México.
4. ¿Quiere manejar su coche?
Sí, quiero manejarlo.
5. ¿Qué le gusta cocinar?
Me gusta cocinar comida china.
6. ¿Dónde puede cambiar su dinero?
Puedo cambiarlo en el banco.
7. ¿Cuándo necesita prepararlo?
Necesito prepararlo ahora.
8. ¿Cuándo tiene que contestar la carta?
Tengo que contestarla antes del sábado.
9. ¿Va a cerrar la tienda temprano?
Sí, voy a cerrarla temprano.
10. ¿Quiere comprar un regalo?
Sí, quiero comprar uno.
11. ¿Puede jugar tenis muy bien?
No, no puedo jugar muy bien.
12. ¿Va a ir a la tienda ahora?
No, no voy a ir ahora.
13. ¿Necesita pensarlo un poco más?
Sí, necesito pensarlo un poco más.
14. ¿Qué quiere tomar?
Quiero tomar una cerveza fría.
15. ¿A qué hora va a dejar de trabajar?
Voy a dejar de trabajar a las cinco.
16. ¿Cuándo tiene que pagar la cuenta?
Tengo que pagarla la próxima semana.

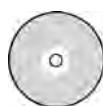
1. At what time do you need to work?
I need to work tomorrow at eight.
2. How much do you want to earn?
I want to earn 500 pesos per month.
3. To where are you going to travel?
I'm going to travel to Mexico.
4. Do you want to drive your car?
Yes, I want to drive it.
5. What do you like to cook?
I like to cook Chinese food.
6. Where can you exchange your money?
I can exchange it in the bank.
7. When do you need to prepare it?
I need to prepare it now.
8. When do you have to answer the letter?
I have to answer it before Saturday.
9. Are you going to close the store early?
Yes, I'm going to close it early.
10. Do you want to buy a gift?
Yes, I want to buy one.
11. Can you play tennis very well?
No, I can't play very well.
12. Are you going to go to the store now?
No, I'm not going to go now.
13. Do you need to think about it (*m*) a little more?
Yes, I need to think about it a little more.
14. What do you want to drink?
I want to drink a cold beer.
15. At what time are you going to quit working?
I'm going to quit working at 5 o'clock.
16. When do you have to pay the bill?
I have to pay it next week.

**A****to page 77**

As a spoken exercise translate the Spanish column into English,
then the English column into Spanish.

17. ¿A qué hora quiere salir de la oficina?
Quiero salir a las cinco.
18. ¿Va a pedir la cuenta?
Sí, voy a pedirla ahora.
19. ¿Puede vender sus productos en México?
Sí, puedo venderlos aquí.
20. ¿Dónde quiere dormir esta noche?
Quiero dormir en el hotel.
21. ¿Le gusta escribir cartas?
No, no me gusta escribirlas.
22. ¿Tiene que correr cada día?
Sí, tengo que correr cada día.
23. ¿Quiere ver una película?
Sí, quiero ver una.
24. ¿Dónde quiere vivir el próximo año?
Quiero vivir en Cancún.
25. ¿Puede entenderme?
No, no puedo entenderlo.
26. ¿Cuándo va a aprender español?
Voy a aprender español este año.
27. ¿Qué le gusta comer en la mañana?
Me gusta comer fruta y pan tostado.
28. ¿Quiere salir conmigo?
Sí, quiero salir con Ud.
29. ¿Puede creerlo?
No, no puedo creerlo.
30. ¿Necesita ver a un doctor?
No, no necesito ver a uno.
31. ¿Cuándo tiene que recibir el cheque?
Tengo que recibarlo antes de la próxima semana.
32. ¿Dónde va a subir al autobús?
Voy a subir aquí.
33. ¿Cuánto tiempo le gusta dormir?
Me gusta dormir (por) ocho horas.

17. At what time do you want to leave the office?
I want to leave at 5:00.
18. Are you going to ask for the bill?
Yes, I'm going to ask for it now.
19. Can you sell your products in Mexico?
Yes, I can sell them here.
20. Where do you want to sleep tonight?
I want to sleep in the hotel.
21. Do you like to write letters?
No, I don't like to write them.
22. Do you have to run every day?
Yes, I have to run every day.
23. Do you want to see a movie?
Yes, I want to see one.
24. Where do you want to live next year?
I want to live in Cancún.
25. Can you understand me?
No, I can't understand you (m).
26. When are you going to learn Spanish?
I'm going to learn Spanish this year.
27. What do you like to eat in the morning?
I like to eat fruit and toast.
28. Do you want to go out with me?
Yes, I want to go out with you.
29. Can you believe it?
No, I can't believe it.
30. Do you need to see a doctor?
No, I don't need to see one.
31. When do you have to receive the check?
I have to receive it before next week.
32. Where are you going to get on the bus?
I'm going to get on here.
33. How long do you like to sleep?
I like to sleep (for) eight hours.



A

to page 78

As a spoken exercise translate the Spanish column into English, then the English column into Spanish.

34. ¿Qué quiere leer?
Quiero leer este libro.
35. ¿Puede seguir a Juan?
Sí, puedo seguirlo.
36. ¿Puede ir conmigo mañana en la mañana?
Sí, puedo ir con Ud.
37. ¿Dónde tiene que estar mañana?
Tengo que estar en clase.
38. ¿Dónde quiere poner la fruta?
Quiero ponerla en la cocina.
39. ¿Cuándo puede conseguir boletos para el cine?
Puedo conseguirlos el domingo.
40. ¿Qué le gusta hacer en las tardes?
Me gusta jugar con los niños.
41. ¿Puede oírme?
Sí, puedo oírlo.
42. ¿Va a ir a la fiesta?
Sí, pero voy a ir un poco tarde.
43. ¿Qué necesita traer para la fiesta?
Necesito traer una botella de vino.
44. ¿Cuándo tiene que saber?
Tengo que saber cuanto antes.
45. ¿Quiere conocer a mi esposa?
Sí, quiero conocerla.
46. ¿Cuándo va a tener tiempo para estudiar?
Voy a tener tiempo esta noche.
47. ¿Quiere ser mi amigo?
Sí, quiero ser su amigo.
48. ¿Quiere ir a la fiesta conmigo?
Sí, quiero ir con Ud.
49. ¿Puede hacerlo hoy?
Sí, puedo hacerlo.
50. ¿Tiene que venir temprano?
No, no tengo que venir temprano.

34. What do you want to read?
I want to read this book.
35. Can you follow Juan?
Yes, I can follow him.
36. Can you go with me tomorrow morning?
Yes, I can go with you.
37. Where do you have to be tomorrow?
I have to be in class.
38. Where do you want to put the fruit?
I want to put it in the kitchen.
39. When can you get tickets for the movie?
I can get them on Sunday.
40. What do you like to do in the afternoons?
I like to play with the children.
41. Can you hear me?
Yes, I can hear you (*m*).
42. Are you going to go to the party?
Yes, but I'm going to go a little late.
43. What do you need to bring for the party?
I need to bring a bottle of wine.
44. When do you have to know?
I have to know as soon as possible.
45. Do you want to meet my wife?
Yes, I want to meet her.
46. When are you going to have time to study?
I'm going to have time tonight.
47. Do you want to be my friend (*m*)?
Yes, I want to be your friend.
48. Do you want to go to the party with me?
Yes, I want to go with you.
49. Can you do it today?
Yes, I can do it.
50. Do you have to come early?
No, I don't have to come early.

Section V

POWER VERBS CONJUGATION

Present Tense

Vocabulary preparation



P

This is the vocabulary that will be used in the following section.
Study it, highlight difficult words, then do the exercises on the next pages.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. rápido | quickly | 31. diferentes | different |
| 2. la película | the movie | 32. la cama | the bed |
| 3. un cheque de viajero . . | traveller's check | 33. la tele(visión) | the television |
| 4. un refresco | a soft drink | 34. las telenovelas | the soap operas |
| 5. frecuentemente | frequently | 35. la sopa | the soup |
| 6. [el] postre | [the] dessert | 36. el viaje | the trip |
| 7. una botella | a bottle | 37. las botanas | the appetizers |
| 8. vino tinto | red wine | 38. las uvas | the grapes |
| 9. las sábanas | the sheets | 39. la limonada | the lemonade |
| 10. la renta | the rent | 40. los aretes | the earrings |
| 11. el tequila | the tequila | 41. hace quince minutos . . | fifteen minutes ago |
| 12. china | Chinese | 42. uno | one |
| 13. una aspirina | an aspirin | 43. dos | two |
| 14. las ruinas | the ruins | 44. tres | three |
| 15. los invitados | the guests | 45. cuatro | four |
| 16. tu novio | your boyfriend | 46. cinco | five |
| 17. fútbol | football (soccer) | 47. seis | six |
| 18. las bebidas | the drinks | 48. siete | seven |
| 19. la recepción | the front (reception) desk | 49. ocho | eight |
| 20. al aeropuerto | to the airport | 50. nueve | nine |
| 21. varios | various, several | 51. diez | ten |
| 22. desde | from | 52. quince | fifteen |
| 23. un pastel | a cake | 53. el lunes | Monday |
| 24. de seguro | for sure | 54. el martes | Tuesday |
| 25. hermano | brother | 55. el miércoles | Wednesday |
| 26. a tiempo | on time | 56. el jueves | Thursday |
| 27. la biblioteca | the library | 57. el viernes | Friday |
| 28. permiso | permission | 58. el sábado | Saturday |
| 29. al mediodía | at noon | 59. el domingo | Sunday |
| 30. al campo | to the country | | |

-ar endings	
-o	-amos
-as	
-a	-an

-er endings	
-o	-emos
-es	
-e	-en

Before we learn how to conjugate, I want you to look carefully at the WE forms of the power verbs so you can spell them correctly.

necesitamos = we need
tenemos que = we have to

vamos a = we are going to
podemos = we can

queremos = we want
nos gusta = we like

Querer, poder, and tener have spelling changes in the stem in all forms (*quiero, quieres, quiere, quieren*) except the we form (*queremos*).

querer
poder
tener

-> **quiero/quiere**
 ->**puedo/puede**
 ->**tengo/tiene**

-> **queremos**
 ->**podemos**
 ->**tenemos**

Fill in the blanks, copying the verb form. Check your spelling carefully.

tenemos que	queremos	podemos
vamos a	nos gusta	necesitamos

E  **S** answers below

1. we want _____
2. we can _____
3. we're going to _____
4. we have to _____
5. we like _____
6. we need _____
7. we have to _____
8. we're going to _____

9. we like _____
10. we want _____
11. we're going to _____
12. we have to _____
13. we like _____
14. we need _____
15. we want _____
16. we can _____



to exercise above

Cover one side and translate out loud.

1. we want _____ queremos
2. we can _____ podemos
3. we're going to _____ vamos a
4. we have to _____ tenemos que
5. we like _____ nos gusta
6. we need _____ necesitamos
7. we have to _____ tenemos que
8. we're going to _____ vamos a

9. we like _____ nos gusta
10. we want _____ queremos
11. we're going to _____ vamos a
12. we have to _____ tenemos que
13. we like _____ nos gusta
14. we need _____ necesitamos
15. we want _____ queremos
16. we can _____ podemos

'We' forms

-ar endings	
-o	-amos
-as	
-a	-an

-er endings	
-o	-emos
-es	
-e	-en

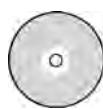
necesitamos = we need
vamos a = we are going to
nos gusta = we like

queremos = we want
tenemos que = we have to
podemos = we can



answers on next page

1. We can't speak Spanish very fast. _____ rápido
2. We don't like to write letters. _____
3. We need to think about it (*m*) a little more. _____
4. We are going to leave tomorrow. _____
5. We want to know as soon as possible. _____
6. We have to go to the bank now. _____
7. We can't understand the movie. _____ la película
8. We don't need to buy anything now. _____
9. We want to leave our suitcases here for an hour. _____
10. We need to arrange our documents. _____ nuestros documentos
11. We can't do it (*m*) until next week. _____
12. We are going to pay with a traveller's check. _____ un cheque de viajero
13. We want to drink a soft drink. _____ un refresco
14. We like to visit Mexico often. _____ frecuentemente
15. We have to be there at 8:00 tonight. _____
16. We're not going to order dessert. _____ postre
17. We can't find an apartment with a phone. _____ teléfono
18. We need to learn Spanish as soon as possible. _____
19. We don't like to drive at night. _____
20. We can follow you (*m*) to your house. _____
21. We are going to bring a bottle of red wine. _____ una botella de vino tinto
22. We don't like to watch television every day. _____
23. We have to clean the bathroom. _____ el baño
24. We like to read the newspaper every day. _____ el periódico



A

to previous page

As a spoken exercise translate the Spanish column into English, then the English column into Spanish.

1. No podemos hablar español muy rápido.
2. No nos gusta escribir cartas.
3. Necesitamos pensarlo un poco más.
4. Vamos a salir mañana.
5. Queremos saber cuanto antes.
6. Tenemos que ir al banco ahora.
7. No podemos entender la película.
8. No necesitamos comprar nada ahora.
9. Queremos dejar nuestras maletas aquí por una hora.
10. Necesitamos arreglar nuestros documentos.
11. No podemos hacerlo hasta la próxima semana.
12. Vamos a pagar con un cheque de viajero.
13. Queremos tomar un refresco.
14. Nos gusta visitar México frecuentemente.
15. Tenemos que estar allí a las ocho esta noche.
16. No vamos a ordenar postre.
17. No podemos encontrar un departamento con teléfono.
18. Necesitamos aprender español cuanto antes.
19. No nos gusta manejar en la noche.
20. Podemos seguirlo a su casa.
21. Vamos a traer una botella de vino tinto.
22. No nos gusta ver televisión cada día.
23. Tenemos que limpiar el baño.
24. Nos gusta leer el periódico cada día.
1. We can't speak Spanish very fast.
2. We don't like to write letters.
3. We need to think about it (*m*) a little more.
4. We are going to leave tomorrow.
5. We want to know as soon as possible.
6. We have to go to the bank now.
7. We can't understand the movie.
8. We don't need to buy anything now.
9. We want to leave our suitcases here for one hour.
10. We need to arrange our documents.
11. We can't do it (*m*) until next week.
12. We are going to pay with a traveller's check.
13. We want to drink a soft drink.
14. We like to visit Mexico frequently.
15. We have to be there at 8:00 tonight
16. We're not going to order dessert.
17. We can't find an apartment with a phone.
18. We need to learn Spanish as soon as possible.
19. We don't like to drive at night.
20. We can follow you (*m*) to your house.
21. We are going to bring a bottle of red wine.
22. We don't like to watch television every day.
23. We have to clean the bathroom.
24. We like to read the newspaper every day.

Spanish verb conjugation

Let's start by learning to conjugate *necesitar*. *Necesitar* is the infinitive ('to'-form of the verb). The infinitive has two parts:

1. a stem (*necesit-*)
2. an ending (-ar).

In Spanish the people (subjects) are portrayed by adding different endings to the verb stem, in this case, *necesit-*.

- I need = ***Necesito***.
- You (personal) need = ***Necesitas***.
- You (formal), he, she needs = ***Necesita***.
- We need = ***Necesitamos***.
- You all (you plural), they (m, f) need = ***Necesitan***.

Look carefully at the conjugated forms of *necesitar*.

necesitar = to need	
necesito I need	necesitamos WE need
necesitas ⌘YOU (pers.) need	(BLANK)
necesita HE needs SHE needs ⌘ YOU (form.) need	necesitan ⌚THEY (m) need ⌚THEY (f) need YOU ALL need
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ⌘ There is both a personal YOU (<i>tú</i>) and formal YOU (<i>Ud.</i>). Refer to page 12 for an explanation. ⌚ There is a masculine and feminine THEY, which takes the same verb form as YOU ALL (you plural). <p>The blank space in the verb tree above is the personal YOU ALL, which is not used in Mexico or South America so we will not use it in this book.</p>	

SUBJECT PRONOUNS

In Spanish as in English, we use the subject pronouns, *I*, *you*, *he*, *she*, and so on. **These pronouns are not necessary in Spanish since the verb endings indicate the subjects.** However, they are used to emphasize or clarify who the subject is.

Look at *necesitar* using the subject pronouns. Notice that *usted* is written *Ud.* and *ustedes* = *Uds.*

Yo necesito I need	Nosotros necesitamos WE need
Tú necesitas YOU (pers.) need	
Él necesita HE needs	Ellos necesitan THEY (m) need
Ella necesita SHE needs	Ellas necesitan THEY (f) need
Ud. necesita YOU (form.) need	Uds. necesitan YOU ALL need

1. Look at the verb forms:

- necesito* = I need
necesitas = you (*tú*) need
necesitamos = we need

Each of these verb forms refer to only one subject, I, you (*tú*) and we. We use the pronouns with these forms only to emphasize the subject.

necesito = I need
 EMPHASIS *yo necesito* = I need

2. Look at the verb forms:

- necesita* = he needs, she needs, you (*Ud.*) need
necesitan = they need (m & f), you all need

Because these verb forms can represent several subjects, it is common to clarify the subject with a subject pronoun, especially in a question.

CLARIFICATION	él necesita = he needs
	ella necesita = she needs
	Ud. necesita = you (<i>Ud.</i>) need
	ellos necesitan = they (m) need
	ellas necesitan = they (f) need
	Uds. necesitan = you all need

Let's learn to connect the subject pronouns with the correct verb ending.

Yo necesito I need	Nosotros necesitamos WE need
Tú necesitas YOU (pers.) need	
Él necesita HE needs	Ellos necesitan THEY (m) need
Ella necesita SHE needs	Ellas necesitan THEY (f) need
Ud. necesita YOU (form.) need	Uds. necesitan YOU ALL need

Necesitar conjugation

necesar	
yo necesito	nosotros necesitamos
tú necesitas	
él, ella, Ud. necesita	ellos, ellas, Uds. necesitan

Conjugate the verb *necesar* according to the subject pronoun. **answers below**

Remember that
Carlos (he) needs = Carlos necesita
Maria (she) needs = María necesita
You and I need, He and I need (we) need = necesitamos
Carlos and Maria (they) need = Carlos y María necesitan

Yo necesito
Él _____
Nosotros _____
Ud. _____
Ellas _____
Uds. _____
Tú _____
Los niños _____
Yo _____
Uds. _____
María _____

Ella _____
Carlos _____
Carlos y María _____
Ellos _____
Tú _____
Nosotros _____
Él _____
Yo _____
Uds. _____
Tú _____
Él y yo _____

Uds. _____
Tú y yo _____
Ellas _____
Tú _____
Yo _____
Ud. _____
Nosotros _____
Juan _____
Los estudiantes _____
Yo _____
Uds. _____

Fill in the blank with the proper form of *necesar*. Put in the subject pronoun. **answers below**

I Yo necesito
He _____
We _____
You (Ud.) _____
They (f) _____
You all _____
You (tú) _____
The children _____
I _____
You all _____
María _____

She _____
Carlos _____
Carlos and Maria _____
They (m) _____
You (tú) _____
We _____
He _____
I _____
You all _____
You (tú) _____
He and I _____

You all _____
You (tú) and I _____
They (f) _____
You (tú) _____
I _____
You (Ud.) _____
We _____
Juan _____
The students _____
I _____
You all _____



to exercises above

Yo necesito
Él necesita
Nosotros necesitamos
Ud. necesita
Ellas necesitan
Uds. necesitan
Tú necesitas
Los niños necesitan
Yo necesito
Uds. necesitan
María necesita

Ella necesita
Carlos necesita
Carlos y María necesitan
Ellos necesitan
Tú necesitas
Nosotros necesitamos
Él necesita
Yo necesito
Uds. necesitan
Tú necesitas
Él y yo necesitamos

Uds. necesitan
Tú y yo necesitamos
Ellas necesitan
Tú necesitas
Yo necesito
Ud. necesita
Nosotros necesitamos
Juan necesita
Los estudiantes necesitan
Yo necesito
Uds. necesitan

Disc 2 track 7
Cassette 2 side B



How to make a question

IN A SPANISH QUESTION

The subject comes after the verb.

You can put the subject:

1) after the infinitive -

¿Necesita salir José ahora?

2) after the conjugated verb -

¿Necesita José salir ahora?

3) at the end of the sentence -

¿Necesita salir ahora José?

In our exercises, we are going to put the subject after the infinitive.

Look at the difference between a statement and question in Spanish.

José necesita trabajar. = Jose needs to work.

¿Necesita trabajar José? = Does Jose need to work?

Notice how the subject comes after the infinitive.

Look at these examples:

¿Necesita salir él? = Does he need to leave?

¿Necesitan comer ellos? = Do they need to eat?

¿Necesitan venir Uds.? = Do you all need to come?

¿Necesita trabajar Ud.? = Do you (*formal*) need to work?

¿Necesita cantar María? = Does María need to sing?

1. At the beginning of this course, we were studying just the 'you' (*formal* = *Ud.*) and 'I' forms of the power verbs, so no clarifiers were used.

¿Necesita salir? = Do you (*formal*) need to leave?

Sí, necesito salir. = Yes, I need to leave.

If the the clarifier 'you' (*Ud.*) were used, the question would be:

¿Necesita salir Ud.? = Do you (*Ud.*) need to leave?

Sí, necesito salir. = Yes, I need to leave.

2. Since *necesita* can mean 'you' (*formal*), 'he,' or 'she,' we usually clarify with the subject pronoun in the question.

¿Necesita salir él? = Does he need to leave?

Sí, necesita salir. = Yes, he needs to leave.

¿Necesita salir ella? = Does she need to leave?

Sí, necesita salir. = Yes, she needs to leave.

3. Notice how we clarify 'you all' and 'they' (*m.*, *f.*).

¿Necesitan salir Uds.? = Do you all need to leave?

Sí, necesitamos salir. = Yes, we need to leave.

¿Necesitan salir ellos? = Do they (*m*) need to leave?

Sí, necesitan salir. = Yes, they need to leave.

¿Necesitan salir ellas? = Do they (*f*) need to leave?

Sí, necesitan salir. = Yes, they need to leave.

4. Notice how the subject pronouns are used in the questions but are not in the answers. Once we know to whom we are referring, we don't use the pronouns because the verb indicates the subject.



Notice how the subject comes after the infinitive. Translate into English.
answers below

1. *¿Necesita salir él?* _____
2. *¿Necesitan comer ellos?* _____
3. *¿Necesitas trabajar?* _____
4. *¿Necesita pagar Ud.?* _____
5. *¿Necesitan jugar los niños?* _____
6. *¿Necesitan venir Uds.?* _____



1. Does he need to leave?
2. Do they (*m*) need to eat?
3. Do you (*personal*) need to work?

4. Do you (*formal*) need to pay?
5. Do the children need to play?
6. Do you all need to come?

Necesitar conjugation

translation exercise

necesar	
yo necesito	nosotros necesitamos
tú necesitas	
él, ella, Ud. necesita	elos, ellas, Uds. necesitan



Put the pronouns *él, ella, Ud., ellos, ellas*, and *Uds.* in the question after the infinitive.
Leave them out in the answer.

answers on next page

1. When does he need to eat? *¿Cuándo necesita comer él?*

He needs to eat soon. *Necesita comer pronto.*

2. Do you (*tú*) need to change money?

Yes, I need to change it.

3. When does she need to begin?

She needs to begin as soon as possible.

4. When do you all need to leave?

We need to leave next week.

5. What do you (*tú*) need to buy?

I need to buy a gift for my son.

6. When do you all need to know?

We need to know before tomorrow.

7. Do you (*tú*) need to fill the tank?

No, I don't need to fill it now.

8. Do they (*m*) need to close the store now?

Yes, they need to close it early.

9. When do you (*Ud.*) need to sign the contract?

el contrato

I need to sign it this afternoon.

10. Do they (*f*) need to earn more?

Yes, they need to earn a lot more.

11. Does she need to change the sheets today?

las sábanas

No, she doesn't need to change them.

12. Where does Miguel need to wait?

He needs to wait here.

13. When does Jose need to answer the letter?

He needs to answer it this week.

14. Do Maria & Carlos need to go with you (*Ud.*)?

Yes, they need to go with me.

15. Do you (*tú*) need to use my telephone?

Yes, I need to use it please.

16. When do you (*Ud.*) need to pay the rent?

la renta

I need to pay it on Monday.

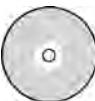
el lunes

Necesitar conjugation

spoken exercise


A
[to previous page](#)

As a spoken exercise translate the Spanish column into English,
then the English column into Spanish.


él vs. el (#1 and #2)

éI with an accent = he

eI without an accent = the (*m*)

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. ¿Cuándo necesita comer él?
Necesita comer pronto. | 1. When does he need to eat?
He needs to eat soon. |
| 2. ¿Necesitas cambiar el dinero?
Sí, necesito cambiarlo. | 2. Do you (<i>tú</i>) need to change the money?
Yes, I need to change it. |
| 3. ¿Cuándo necesita empezar ella?
Necesita empezar cuanto antes. | 3. When does she need to begin?
She needs to begin as soon as possible. |
| 4. ¿Cuándo necesitan salir Uds.?
Necesitamos salir la próxima semana. | 4. When do you all need to leave?
We need to leave next week. |
| 5. ¿Qué necesitas comprar?
Necesito comprar un regalo para mi hijo. | 5. What do you (<i>tú</i>) need to buy?
I need to buy a gift for my son. |
| 6. ¿Cuándo necesitan saber Uds.?
Necesitamos saber antes de mañana. | 6. When do you all need to know?
We need to know before tomorrow. |
| 7. ¿Necesitas llenar el tanque?
No, no necesito llenarlo ahora. | 7. Do you (<i>tú</i>) need to fill the tank?
No, I don't need to fill it now. |
| 8. ¿Necesitan cerrar ellos la tienda ahora?
Sí, necesitan cerrarla temprano. | 8. Do they (<i>m</i>) need to close the store now?
Yes, they need to close it early. |
| 9. ¿Cuándo necesita firmar Ud. el contrato?
Necesito firmarlo esta tarde. | 9. When do you (<i>Ud.</i>) need to sign the contract?
I need to sign it this afternoon. |
| 10. ¿Necesitan ganar ellas más?
Sí, necesitan ganar mucho más. | 10. Do they (<i>f</i>) need to earn more?
Yes, they need to earn a lot more. |
| 11. ¿Necesita cambiar ella las sábanas hoy?
No, no necesita cambiarlas. | 11. Does she need to change the sheets today?
No, she doesn't need to change them. |
| 12. ¿Dónde necesita esperar Miguel?
Necesita esperar aquí. | 12. Where does Miguel need to wait?
He needs to wait here. |
| 13. ¿Cuándo necesita contestar José la carta?
Necesita contestarla esta semana. | 13. When does Jose need to answer the letter?
He needs to answer it this week. |
| 14. ¿Necesitan ir María y Carlos con Ud.?
Sí, necesitan ir conmigo. | 14. Do Maria & Carlos need to go with you (<i>Ud.</i>)?
Yes, they need to go with me. |
| 15. ¿Necesitas usar mi teléfono?
Sí, necesito usarlo por favor. | 15. Do you (<i>tú</i>) need to use my telephone?
Yes, I need to use it please. |
| 16. ¿Cuándo necesita pagar Ud. la renta?
Necesito pagarla el lunes. | 16. When do you (<i>Ud.</i>) need to pay the rent?
I need to pay it on Monday. |

Querer conjugation

querer	
yo quiero	nosotros queremos
tú quieres	
él, ella, Ud. quiere	ellos, ellas, Uds. quieren

Notice that *querer* changes to *quie-* in all forms **except the WE form** which is *queremos*.
 Conjugate the verb *querer* according to the subject pronoun. **answers below**

Yo quiero
 Él _____
 Nosotros _____
 Ud. _____
 Ellas _____
 Uds. _____
 Tú _____
 Los niños _____
 Yo _____
 Uds. _____
 María _____

Ella _____
 Carlos _____
 Carlos y María _____
 Ellos _____
 Tú _____
 Nosotros _____
 Él _____
 Yo _____
 Uds. _____
 Tú _____
 Él y yo _____

Uds. _____
 Tú y yo _____
 Ellas _____
 Tú _____
 Yo _____
 Ud. _____
 Nosotros _____
 Juan _____
 Los niños _____
 Yo _____
 Uds. _____

Fill in the blank with the proper form of *querer* using the subject pronoun. **answers below**

I yo quiero
 He _____
 We _____
 You (Ud.) _____
 They (f) _____
 You all _____
 You (tú) _____
 The children _____
 I _____
 You all _____
 Maria _____

She _____
 Carlos _____
 Carlos and Maria _____
 They (m) _____
 You (tú) _____
 We _____
 He _____
 I _____
 You all _____
 You (tú) _____
 He and I _____

You all _____
 You (tú) and I _____
 They (f) _____
 You (tú) _____
 I _____
 You (Ud.) _____
 We _____
 Juan _____
 The children _____
 I _____
 You all _____

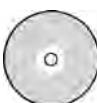
A to exercises above

Yo **quiero**
 Él **quiere**
 Nosotros **queremos**
 Ud. **quiere**
 Ellas **quieren**
 Uds. **quieren**
 Tú **quieres**
 Los niños **quieren**
 Yo **quiero**
 Uds. **quieren**
 María **quiere**

Ella **quiere**
 Carlos **quiere**
 Carlos y María **quieren**
 Ellos **quieren**
 Tú **quieres**
 Nosotros **queremos**
 Él **quiere**
 Yo **quiero**
 Uds. **quieren**
 Tú **quieres**
 Él y yo **queremos**

Uds. **quieren**
 Tú y yo **queremos**
 Ellas **quieren**
 Tú **quieres**
 Yo **quiero**
 Ud. **quiere**
 Nosotros **queremos**
 Juan **quiere**
 Los niños **quieren**
 Yo **quiero**
 Uds. **quieren**

Disc 2 track 9
 Cassette 2 side B



Querer conjugation

translation exercise

querer	
yo quiero	nosotros queremos
tú quieres	
él, ella, Ud. quiere	ellos, ellas, Uds. quieren

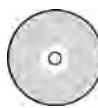


answers on next page

agua (see #2) is a feminine word but we say **el agua** for pronunciation purposes.

el tequila (see #6) is a masculine word

1. Does Rosa want to learn English? *¿Quiere aprender Rosa inglés?*
Yes, she wants to learn it. *Sí, quiere aprenderlo.*
2. Do the children (*m*) want to play in the water?
Yes, they want to play there. _____ allí
3. Do you (*Ud.*) want to use the bathroom?
Yes, I want to use it, please. _____
4. Do you (*tú*) want to open a window?
Yes, I want to open one. _____
5. Do you all want to sell your house?
No, we don't want to sell it. _____
6. Do you (*tú*) want to taste the tequila? _____ el tequila
No, I don't want to taste it. _____
7. Do you (*tú*) want to be my friend (*m*)? _____
Yes, I want to be your friend. _____
8. Where do you all want to go?
We want to go to the beach. _____
9. Do you (*tú*) want to order now?
No. I want to order in a few minutes. _____ unos minutos
10. Does Rosa want to come to the party?
Yes, she wants to come. _____
11. What do you all want to eat?
We want to eat Chinese food. _____ comida china
12. Do you (*Ud.*) want to think about it (*m*)?
Yes, I want to think about it a little more. _____
13. Do you (*tú*) want to take an aspirin?
Yes, I want to take one, please. _____ una aspirina
14. When do they (*m*) want to leave?
They want to leave as soon as possible. _____
15. Do they (*f*) want to work on Sunday?
No, they don't want to work on Sunday. _____ el domingo
16. Does Luis want to go with them (*f*)?
Yes, he wants to go with them. _____



Querer conjugation spoken exercise



A

[to previous page](#)

As a spoken exercise translate the Spanish column into English,
then the English column into Spanish.

1. ¿Quiere aprender Rosa inglés?
Sí, quiere aprenderlo.
2. ¿Quieren jugar los niños en el agua?
Sí, quieren jugar allí.
3. ¿Quiere usar Ud. el baño?
Sí, quiero usarlo, por favor.
4. ¿Quieres abrir una ventana?
Sí, quiero abrir una.
5. ¿Quieren vender Uds. su casa?
No, no queremos venderla.
6. ¿Quieres probar el tequila?
No, no quiero probarlo.
7. ¿Quieres ser mi amigo?
Sí, quiero ser tu amigo.
8. ¿Adónde quieren ir Uds.?
Queremos ir a la playa.
9. ¿Quieres ordenar ahora?
No. Quiero ordenar en unos minutos.
10. ¿Quiere venir Rosa a la fiesta?
Sí, quiere venir.
11. ¿Qué quieren comer Uds.?
Queremos comer comida china.
12. ¿Quiere pensarlo Ud. ?
Sí, quiero pensarlo un poco más.
13. ¿Quieres tomar una aspirina?
Sí, quiero tomar una, por favor.
14. ¿Cuándo quieren salir ellos?
Quieren salir cuanto antes.
15. ¿Quieren trabajar ellas el domingo?
No, no quieren trabajar el domingo.
16. ¿Quiere ir Luis con ellas?
Sí, quiere ir con ellas.

1. Does Rosa want to learn English?
Yes, she wants to learn it.
2. Do the children want to play in the water?
Yes, they want to play there.
3. Do you (*Ud.*) want to use the bathroom?
Yes, I want to use it, please.
4. Do you (*tú*) want to open a window?
Yes, I want to open one.
5. Do you all want to sell your house?
No, we don't want to sell it.
6. Do you (*tú*) want to taste the tequila?
No, I don't want to taste it.
7. Do you (*tú*) want to be my friend (*m*)?
Yes, I want to be your friend.
8. Where do you all want to go?
We want to go to the beach.
9. Do you (*tú*) want to order now?
No. I want to order in a few minutes.
10. Does Rosa want to come to the party?
Yes, she wants to come.
11. What do you all want to eat?
We want to eat Chinese food.
12. Do you (*Ud.*) want to think about it?
Yes, I want to think about it a little more.
13. Do you (*tú*) want to take an aspirin?
Yes, I want to take one, please.
14. When do they (*m*) want to leave?
They want to leave as soon as possible.
15. Do they (*f*) want to work on Sunday?
No, they don't want to work on Sunday.
16. Does Luis want to go with them (*f*)?
Yes, he wants to go with them.

Ir conjugation

ir	
yo voy	nosotros vamos
tú vas	
él, ella, Ud. va	ellos, ellas, Uds. van

IR is an irregular verb and has its own pattern. Notice that the first person singular form is *voy* and the rest of the forms have regular -AR endings: *vas*, *va*, *vamos*, *van*.

Conjugate the verb *ir* according to the subject pronoun. **answers below**

Yo voy
 Él _____
 Nosotros _____
 Ud. _____
 Ellas _____
 Uds. _____
 Tú _____
 Los niños _____
 Yo _____
 Uds. _____
 María _____

Ella _____
 Carlos _____
 Carlos y María _____
 Ellos _____
 Tú _____
 Nosotros _____
 Él _____
 Yo _____
 Uds. _____
 Tú _____
 Él y yo _____

Uds. _____
 Tú y yo _____
 Ellas _____
 Tú _____
 Yo _____
 Ud. _____
 Nosotros _____
 Juan _____
 Los niños _____
 Yo _____
 Uds. _____

Fill in the blank with the proper form of *ir* using the subject pronoun. **answers below**

I yo voy
 He _____
 We _____
 You (Ud.) _____
 They (f) _____
 You all _____
 You (tú) _____
 The children _____
 I _____
 You all _____
 Maria _____

She _____
 Carlos _____
 Carlos and Maria _____
 They (m) _____
 You (tú) _____
 We _____
 He _____
 I _____
 You all _____
 You (tú) _____
 He and I _____

You all _____
 You (tú) and I _____
 They (f) _____
 You (tú) _____
 I _____
 You (Ud.) _____
 We _____
 Juan _____
 The children _____
 I _____
 You all _____



to exercises above

Yo **voy**
 Él **va**
 Nosotros **vamos**
 Ud. **va**
 Ellas **van**
 Uds. **van**
 Tú **vas**
 Los niños **van**
 Yo **voy**
 Uds. **van**
 María **va**

Ella **va**
 Carlos **va**
 Carlos y María **van**
 Ellos **van**
 Tú **vas**
 Nosotros **vamos**
 Él **va**
 Yo **voy**
 Uds. **van**
 Tú **vas**
 Él y yo **vamos**

Uds. **van**
 Tú y yo **vamos**
 Ellas **van**
 Tú **vas**
 Yo **voy**
 Ud. **va**
 Nosotros **vamos**
 Juan **va**
 Los niños **van**
 Yo **voy**
 Uds. **van**

Disc 2 track 11
 Cassette 2 side B



Ir conjugation

translation exercise

ir

yo voy	nosotros vamos
tú vas	
él, ella, Ud. va	ellos, ellas, Uds. van



Put the subject after the infinitive in the question.
answers on next page

The 'a' follows 'ir' to indicate 'going to.'
Voy a comer. Even though the 'a'
seems redundant, it is necessary.

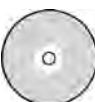
- What time are you all going to go? ¿A qué hora van a ir Uds.?
We're going to go at ten o'clock. Vamos a ir a las diez.
- When is she going to do it (*m*)? _____
She's going to do it in an hour. _____
- Are you (*tú*) going to leave your (*tu*) bag here? _____
No, I'm not going to leave it here. _____
- Are you all going to be at home tonight? _____
Yes, we're going to be there all night. _____
- Where are they (*f*) going to live? _____
They're going to live in Spain. _____
- Are you (*tú*) going to try to rest now? _____
Yes, I'm going to try to rest a little. _____
- Are you all going to work tomorrow? _____
No, we're not going to work tomorrow. _____
- Who is going to drive to Mexico? _____
Miguel is going to drive. _____
- Are you (*Ud.*) going to think about it? _____
Yes, I'm going to think about it a little more. _____
- Who is going to sell the tickets? _____
Rosa is going to sell them. _____
- Are you all going to see the ruins? _____ las ruinas
Yes, we're going to see them. _____
- What time are the guests (*m*) going to arrive? _____ los invitados
They're going to arrive at eight o'clock. _____
- What are you (*Ud.*) going to say? _____
I'm not going to say anything. _____
- Are you (*tú*) going to invite your girlfriend? _____ tu novia
Yes, I'm going to invite her. _____
- When are they (*m*) going to play football? _____ fútbol
They're going to play Sunday morning. _____
- Are you all going to order the drinks now? _____ las bebidas
Yes, we're going to order them before eating. _____

Ir conjugation

spoken exercise

**A****to previous page**

As a spoken exercise translate the Spanish column into English,
then the English column into Spanish.



1. ¿A qué hora van a ir Uds.?
Vamos a ir a las diez.
2. ¿Cuándo va a hacerlo ella?
Va a hacerlo en una hora.
3. ¿Vas a dejar tu bolsa aquí?
No, no voy a dejarla aquí.
4. ¿Van a estar Uds. en casa esta noche?
Sí, vamos a estar allí toda la noche.
5. ¿Dónde van a vivir ellas?
Van a vivir en España.
6. ¿Vas a tratar de descansar ahora?
Sí, voy a tratar de descansar un poco.
7. ¿Van a trabajar Uds. mañana?
No, no vamos a trabajar mañana.
8. ¿Quién va a manejar a México?
Miguel va a manejar.
9. ¿Va a pensarla Ud.?
Sí, voy a pensarla un poco más.
10. ¿Quién va a vender los boletos?
Rosa va a venderlos.
11. ¿Van a ver Uds. las ruinas?
Sí, vamos a verlas.
12. ¿A qué hora van a llegar los invitados?
Van a llegar a las ocho.
13. ¿Qué va a decir Ud.?
No voy a decir nada.
14. ¿Vas a invitar a tu novia?
Sí, voy a invitarla.
15. ¿Cuándo van a jugar ellos fútbol?
Van a jugar el domingo en la mañana.
16. ¿Van a ordenar Uds. las bebidas ahora?
Sí, vamos a ordenarlas antes de comer.
1. What time are you all going to go?
We're going to go at ten o'clock.
2. When is she going to do it?
She's going to do it in an hour.
3. Are you (*tú*) going to leave your (*tu*) bag here?
No, I'm not going to leave it here.
4. Are you all going to be at home tonight?
Yes, we're going to be there all night.
5. Where are they (*f*) going to live?
They're going to live in Spain.
6. Are you (*tú*) going to try to rest now?
Yes, I'm going to try to rest a little.
7. Are you all going to work tomorrow?
No, we're not going to work tomorrow.
8. Who is going to drive to México?
Miguel is going to drive.
9. Are you (*Ud.*) going to think about it?
Yes, I'm going to think about it a little more.
10. Who is going to sell the tickets?
Rosa is going to sell them.
11. Are you all going to see the ruins?
Yes, we're going to see them.
12. What time are the guests going to arrive?
They're going to arrive at eight o'clock.
13. What are you (*Ud.*) going to say?
I'm not going to say anything.
14. Are you (*tú*) going to invite your girlfriend?
Yes, I'm going to invite her.
15. When are they (*m*) going to play football?
They're going to play Sunday morning.
16. Are you all going to order the drinks now?
Yes, we're going to order them before eating.

poder	
yo puedo	nosotros podemos
tú puedes	
él, ella, Ud. puede	ellos, ellas, Uds. pueden

Notice that the first syllable of *poder* changes to *PUE-* in all forms **except the WE form**, which is *PODemos*.

Conjugate the verb *poder* according to the subject pronoun. **answers below**

Yo puedo
 Él _____
 Nosotros _____
 Ud. _____
 Ellas _____
 Uds. _____
 Tú _____
 Los niños _____
 Yo _____
 Uds. _____
 María _____

Ella _____
 Carlos _____
 Carlos y María _____
 Ellos _____
 Tú _____
 Nosotros _____
 Él _____
 Yo _____
 Uds. _____
 Tú _____
 Él y yo _____

Uds. _____
 Tú y yo _____
 Ellas _____
 Tú _____
 Yo _____
 Ud. _____
 Nosotros _____
 Juan _____
 Los niños _____
 Yo _____
 Uds. _____

Fill in the blank with the proper form of *poder*, using the subject pronoun. **answers below**

I yo puedo
 He _____
 We _____
 You (Ud.) _____
 They (f) _____
 You all _____
 You (tú) _____
 The children _____
 I _____
 You all _____
 Maria _____

She _____
 Carlos _____
 Carlos and Maria _____
 They (m) _____
 You (tú) _____
 We _____
 He _____
 I _____
 You all _____
 You (tú) _____
 He and I _____

You all _____
 You (tú) and I _____
 They (f) _____
 You (tú) _____
 I _____
 You (Ud.) _____
 We _____
 Juan _____
 The children _____
 I _____
 You all _____



to exercises above

Yo **puedo**
 Él **puede**
 Nosotros **podemos**
 Ud. **puede**
 Ellas **pueden**
 Uds. **pueden**
 Tú **puedes**
 Los niños **pueden**
 Yo **puedo**
 Uds. **pueden**
 María **puede**

Ella **puede**
 Carlos **puede**
 Carlos y María **pueden**
 Ellos **pueden**
 Tú **puedes**
 Nosotros **podemos**
 Él **puede**
 Yo **puedo**
 Uds. **pueden**
 Tú **puedes**
 Él y yo **podemos**

Uds. **pueden**
 Tú y yo **podemos**
 Ellas **pueden**
 Tú **puedes**
 Yo **puedo**
 Ud. **puede**
 Nosotros **podemos**
 Juan **puede**
 Los niños **pueden**
 Yo **puedo**
 Uds. **pueden**

Disc 2 track 13
 Cassette 2 side B



100 Poder conjugation translation exercise

poder

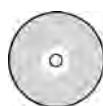
yo puedo	nosotros podemos
tú puedes	
él, ella, Ud. puede	ellos, ellas, Uds. pueden



answers on next page

desde (#8, #9) = from indicates a more specific location,
i.e. *desde aquí* = from here, *desde allí* = from there

1. Can he pass by my house tonight? *¿Puede pasar él por mi casa esta noche?*
Yes, he can pass by after eight o'clock. *Sí, puede pasar después de las ocho.*
2. Can you (Ud.) believe it? _____
No, I can't believe it. _____
3. Where can I get tickets? _____
You (Ud.) can get them at the station. _____
4. Where can I make reservations? _____
You (Ud.) can make them at the front desk. _____ la recepción
5. Can you (Ud.) wait for me a few minutes? _____ unos minutos
Yes, I can wait. _____
6. Can you (tú) take me to the airport tomorrow? _____ al aeropuerto
Yes, I can take you. At what time? _____
7. Can you all recommend a good hotel? _____
Yes, we can recommend several. _____ varios
8. Can you all see? _____
No, we can't see anything from here. _____ desde aquí
9. Can María hear the telephone from the patio? _____ el patio
No, she can't hear it from there. _____ desde allí
10. Can I leave my suitcase here? _____
No, but you (Ud.) can leave it there. _____
11. At what time can they (m) come? _____
They can come at three o'clock. _____
12. What can we bring to the party? _____
You all can bring a cake. _____ un pastel
13. Who can prepare the cake? _____
Rosita can prepare it. _____
14. Can you all decide today? _____
Yes, we can decide. _____
15. When can you all be here? _____
We can be here tomorrow afternoon. _____
16. When can they (m) pay us? _____
They can pay us on Sunday. _____ el domingo



A

to previous page

As a spoken exercise translate the Spanish column into English,
then the English column into Spanish.

1. ¿Puede pasar él por mi casa esta noche?
Sí, puede pasar después de las ocho.
2. ¿Puede creerlo Ud.?
No, no puedo creerlo.
3. ¿Dónde puedo conseguir boletos?
Puede conseguirlos en la estación.
4. ¿Dónde puedo hacer reservaciones?
Puede hacerlas en la recepción.
5. ¿Puede esperarme Ud. unos minutos?
Sí, puedo esperar.
6. ¿Puedes llevarme al aeropuerto mañana?
Sí, puedo llevarte. ¿A qué hora?
7. ¿Pueden recomendar Uds. un buen hotel?
Sí, podemos recomendar varios.
8. ¿Pueden ver Uds.?
No, no podemos ver nada desde aquí.
9. ¿Puede oír María el teléfono desde el patio?
No, no puede oírlo desde allí.
10. ¿Puedo dejar mi maleta aquí?
No, pero puede dejarla allí.
11. ¿A qué hora pueden venir ellos?
Pueden venir a las tres.
12. ¿Qué podemos traer a la fiesta?
Pueden traer un pastel.
13. ¿Quién puede preparar el pastel?
Rosita puede prepararlo.
14. ¿Pueden decidir Uds. hoy?
Sí, podemos decidir.
15. ¿Cuándo pueden estar Uds. aquí?
Podemos estar aquí mañana en la tarde.
16. ¿Cuándo pueden pagarnos ellos?
Pueden pagarnos el domingo.
1. Can he pass by my house tonight?
Yes, he can pass by after eight o'clock.
2. Can you (*Ud.*) believe it?
No, I can't believe it.
3. Where can I get tickets?
You (*Ud.*) can get them at the station.
4. Where can I make reservations?
You (*Ud.*) can make them at the front desk.
5. Can you (*Ud.*) wait for me a few minutes?
Yes, I can wait.
6. Can you (*tú*) take me to the airport tomorrow?
Yes, I can take you. At what time?
7. Can you all recommend a good hotel?
Yes, we can recommend several.
8. Can you all see?
No, we can't see anything from here.
9. Can Maria hear the telephone from the patio?
No, she can't hear it from there.
10. Can I leave my suitcase here?
No, but you (*Ud.*) can leave it there.
11. At what time can they (*m*) come?
They can come at three o'clock.
12. What can we bring to the party?
You all can bring a cake.
13. Who can prepare the cake?
Rosita can prepare it.
14. Can you all decide today?
Yes, we can decide.
15. When can you all be here?
We can be here tomorrow afternoon.
16. When can they (*m*) pay us?
They can pay us on Sunday.

102 Tener conjugation

tener	
yo tengo	nosotros tenemos
tú tienes	
él, ella, Ud. tiene	ellos, ellas, Uds. tienen

Notice that you add **-go** to the *ten-* of *tener* to make 'I have'
and the first syllable of *tener* changes to *TIE-* in all forms **except the WE** which is *TENemos*.

Conjugate the verb *tener* (without the *que*) according to the subject pronoun. **answers below**

Yo tengo
 Él _____
 Nosotros _____
 Ud. _____
 Ellas _____
 Uds. _____
 Tú _____
 Los niños _____
 Yo _____
 Uds. _____
 María _____

Ella _____
 Carlos _____
 Carlos y María _____
 Ellos _____
 Tú _____
 Nosotros _____
 Él _____
 Yo _____
 Uds. _____
 Tú _____
 Él y yo _____

Uds. _____
 Tú y yo _____
 Ellas _____
 Tú _____
 Yo _____
 Ud. _____
 Nosotros _____
 Juan _____
 Los niños _____
 Yo _____
 Uds. _____

Fill in the blank with the proper form of *tener* using the subject pronoun. **answers below**

I yo tengo
 He _____
 We _____
 You (Ud.) _____
 They (f) _____
 You all _____
 You (tú) _____
 The children _____
 I _____
 You all _____
 Maria _____

She _____
 Carlos _____
 Carlos and Maria _____
 They (m) _____
 You (tú) _____
 We _____
 He _____
 I _____
 You all _____
 You (tú) _____
 He and I _____

You all _____
 You (tú) and I _____
 They (f) _____
 You (tú) _____
 I _____
 You (Ud.) _____
 We _____
 Juan _____
 The children _____
 I _____
 You all _____

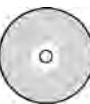
A to exercises above

Yo tengo
 Él tiene
 Nosotros **tenemos**
 Ud. **tiene**
 Ellas **tienen**
 Uds. **tienen**
 Tú **tienes**
 Los niños **tienen**
 Yo **tengo**
 Uds. **tienen**
 María **tiene**

Ella **tiene**
 Carlos **tiene**
 Carlos y María **tienen**
 Ellos **tienen**
 Tú **tienes**
 Nosotros **tenemos**
 Él **tiene**
 Yo **tengo**
 Uds. **tienen**
 Tú **tienes**
 Él y yo **tenemos**

Uds. **tienen**
 Tú y yo **tenemos**
 Ellas **tienen**
 Tú **tienes**
 Yo **tengo**
 Ud. **tiene**
 Nosotros **tenemos**
 Juan **tiene**
 Los niños **tienen**
 Yo **tengo**
 Uds. **tienen**

Disc 3 track 1
 Cassette 3 side A



Tener conjugation

translation exercise

tener	
yo tengo	nosotros tenemos
tú tienes	
él, ella, Ud. tiene	ellos, ellas, Uds. tienen



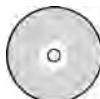
answers on next page

Remember to put *que* after *tener* to say 'to have to.'
 Put the subject after the infinitive in the question:
¿Tiene que trabajar él?

- When does she have to send the package? *¿Cuando tiene que mandar ella el paquete?* el paquete
 She has to send it today for sure. *Tiene que mandarlo hoy de seguro.* hoy de seguro
- Do you (*Ud.*) have to return the books today?
 No, I don't have to return them until tomorrow.
- What does he have to buy for his girlfriend?
 He has to buy flowers and chocolates.
- When do we have to pay the bill?
 We have to pay it before leaving.
- What time do you all have to be there?
 We have to be there at ten o'clock.
- Whom do you (*Ud.*) have to visit in Mexico?
 I have to visit my brother. *a mi hermano*
- For whom does Maria have to wait?
 She has to wait for her son. *a su hijo*
- When do they (*m*) have to decide?
 They have to decide soon.
- Do you (*tú*) have to get off here?
 No, I have to get off on the corner.
- When do we have to start?
 We have to start now in order to arrive on time. *a tiempo*
- When does Juan have to work?
 He has to work today and tomorrow.
- Where do the students have to go?
 They have to go to the library. *a la biblioteca*
- Do you (*tú*) have to ask for permission?
 Yes I have to ask for it. *permiso*
- Does he have to use a dictionary?
 Yes, he has to use one.
- With whom do you (*tú*) have to speak?
 I have to speak with my boss.
- Does Lupita have to wash the dishes?
 Yes, she has to wash them. *los trastes*

Tener conjugation

spoken exercise


A
[to previous page](#)

As a spoken exercise translate the Spanish column into English,
then the English column into Spanish.

1. ¿Cuándo tiene que mandar ella el paquete?
Tiene que mandarlo hoy de seguro.
2. ¿Tiene que regresar Ud. los libros hoy?
No, no tengo que regresárselos hasta mañana.
3. ¿Qué tiene que comprar él para su novia?
Tiene que comprar flores y chocolates.
4. ¿Cuándo tenemos que pagar la cuenta?
Tenemos que pagarla antes de salir.
5. ¿A qué hora tienen que estar Uds. allí?
Tenemos que estar allí a las diez.
6. ¿A quién tiene que visitar Ud. en México?
Tengo que visitar a mi hermano.
7. ¿A quién tiene que esperar María?
Tiene que esperar a su hijo.
8. ¿Cuándo tienen que decidir ellos?
Tienen que decidir pronto.
9. ¿Tienes que bajar aquí?
No, tengo que bajar en la esquina.
10. ¿Cuándo tenemos que empezar?
Tenemos que empezar ahora para llegar a tiempo.
11. ¿Cuándo tiene que trabajar Juan?
Tiene que trabajar hoy y mañana.
12. ¿Adónde tienen que ir los estudiantes?
Tienen que ir a la biblioteca.
13. ¿Tienes que pedir permiso?
Sí, tengo que pedirlo.
14. ¿Tiene que usar él un diccionario?
Sí, tiene que usar uno.
15. ¿Con quién tienes que hablar?
Tengo que hablar con mi jefe.
16. ¿Tiene que lavar Lupita los trastes?
Sí, tiene que lavarlos.

1. When does she have to send the package?
She has to send it today for sure.
2. Do you (*Ud.*) have to return the books today?
No, I don't have to return them until tomorrow.
3. What does he have to buy for his girlfriend?
He has to buy flowers and chocolates.
4. When do we have to pay the bill?
We have to pay it before leaving.
5. What time do you all have to be there?
We have to be there at ten o'clock.
6. Whom do you (*Ud.*) have to visit in Mexico?
I have to visit my brother.
7. For whom does Maria have to wait?
She has to wait for her son.
8. When do they (*m*) have to decide?
They have to decide soon.
9. Do you (*tú*) have to get off here?
No, I have to get off on the corner.
10. When do we have to start?
We have to start now in order to arrive on time.
11. When does Juan have to work?
He has to work today and tomorrow.
12. Where do the students have to go?
They have to go to the library.
13. Do you (*tú*) have to ask for permission?
Yes I have to ask for it.
14. Does he have to use a dictionary?
Yes, he has to use one.
15. With whom do you (*tú*) have to speak?
I have to speak with my boss.
16. Does Lupita have to wash the dishes?
Yes, she has to wash them.

gustar	
a mí me gusta	a nosotros nos gusta
a tí te gusta	
a él, ella, Ud. le gusta	a ellos, ellas, Uds. les gusta

You will remember that *me gusta* really means 'it is pleasing to me' and *le gusta* means 'it is pleasing to you (*Ud.*)'. Look at the verb tree box above. The clarifier/emphasizer **a mí me gusta** means 'to me it is pleasing to me.' Likewise, **a tí te gusta** means 'to

you it is pleasing to you (*tú*). The phrases **a mí**, **a tí** and **a nosotros** are used for emphasis.

The clarifiers **a él**, **a ella**, **a Ud.**, **a ellos**, **a ellas**, **a Uds.** are used in the third person forms for **clarification** when necessary.

Use the correct form of according to the cue. **answers below**

a mí *me gusta*
 a él _____
 a nosotros _____
 a Ud. _____
 a ellas _____
 a Uds. _____
 a tí _____
 a los niños _____
 a mí _____
 a Uds. _____
 a María _____

a ella _____
 a Carlos _____
 a Carlos y María _____
 a ellos _____
 a ti _____
 a nosotros _____
 a él _____
 a mí _____
 a Uds. _____
 a tí _____
 a él _____

a Uds. _____
 a tí _____
 a ellas _____
 a tí _____
 a mí _____
 a Ud. _____
 a nosotros _____
 a Juan _____
 a los estudiantes _____
 a mí _____
 a Uds. _____

Fill in the blank with the proper form of *gustar*, using the clarifier and pronoun. **answers below**

I *a mí me gusta*
 He _____
 We _____
 You (*Ud.*) _____
 They (*f*) _____
 You all _____
 You (*tú*) _____
 The children _____
 I _____
 You all _____
 Maria _____

She _____
 Carlos _____
 Carlos and Maria _____
 They (*m*) _____
 You (*tú*) _____
 We _____
 He _____
 I _____
 You all _____
 You (*tú*) _____
 He _____

You all _____
 You (*tú*) _____
 They (*f*) _____
 You (*tú*) _____
 I _____
 You (*Ud.*) _____
 We _____
 Juan _____
 The children _____
 I _____
 You all _____

A

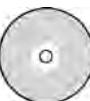
to exercises above

a mí **me gusta**
 a él **le gusta**
 a nosotros **nos gusta**
 a Ud. **le gusta**
 a ellas **les gusta**
 a Uds. **les gusta**
 a tí **te gusta**
 a los niños **les gusta**
 a mí **me gusta**
 a Uds. **les gusta**
 a María **le gusta**

a ella **le gusta**
 a Carlos **le gusta**
 a Carlos y María **les gusta**
 a ellos **les gusta**
 a tí **te gusta**
 a nosotros **nos gusta**
 a él **le gusta**
 a mí **me gusta**
 a Uds. **les gusta**
 a tí **te gusta**
 a él **le gusta**

a Uds. **les gusta**
 a tí **te gusta**
 a ellas **les gusta**
 a tí **te gusta**
 a mí **me gusta**
 a Ud. **le gusta**
 a nosotros **nos gusta**
 a Juan **le gusta**
 a los estudiantes **les gusta**
 a mí **me gusta**
 a Uds. **les gusta**

Disc 3 track 3
 Cassette 3 side A



106 **Gustar conjugation**
translation exercise

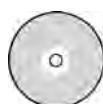
gustar	
a mí me gusta	a nosotros nos gusta
a tí te gusta	
a él, ella, Ud. le gusta	ellos, ellas, Uds. les gusta



answers on next page

In this exercise, do not use the *a mí*, *a ti* or *a nosotros*. These are for emphasis. Use *a él*, *a ella*, *a Ud.*, *a ellos*, *a ellas* and *a Uds.* for clarification after the infinitive in the question: *¿Le gusta bailar a él?*

1. Does he like to dance? *¿Le gusta bailar a él?*
Yes, he likes to dance the cumbia. *Sí, le gusta bailar la cumbia.* _____ la cumbia
2. What time do you all like to eat?
We like to eat at noon. _____ al mediodía
3. Do you all like to sing?
No, we don't like to sing much. _____
4. Do you (*tú*) like to play an instrument?
Yes, I like to play the guitar. _____
5. Do you (*Ud.*) like to play tennis?
Yes, I like to play it. _____
6. Does he like to speak English?
Yes, he likes to speak English. _____
7. What hotel do you (*tú*) like to recommend?
I like to recommend "Casa Rosada." _____
8. Do you all like to walk?
Yes, we like to walk in San Miguel. _____
9. Where do you all like to go on Sundays?
We like to go to the country. _____ al campo los domingos
10. Do you (*tú*) like to travel during the summer?
No, I like to travel during the winter. _____ en verano en invierno
11. Do the Mexicans like to have parties?
Yes, they like to have them. _____
12. What do you (*Ud.*) like to cook?
I like to cook Italian food. _____
13. When do you (*tú*) like to read?
I like to read in bed before sleeping. _____ en la cama
14. What does your friend (*m*) like to drink?
He likes to drink red wine. _____
15. What kind of music do you (*tú*) like to listen to?
I like to listen to rock music. _____ música de rock
16. What does your wife like to watch on TV?
She likes to watch soap operas. _____ las telenovelas



A

to previous page

As a spoken exercise translate the Spanish column into English,
then the English column into Spanish.

1. ¿Le gusta bailar a él?
Sí, le gusta bailar la cumbia.
2. ¿A qué hora les gusta comer a Uds?
Nos gusta comer al mediodía.
3. ¿Les gusta cantar a Uds.?
No, no nos gusta cantar mucho.
4. ¿Te gusta tocar un instrumento?
Sí, me gusta tocar la guitarra.
5. ¿Le gusta jugar a Ud. tenis?
Sí, me gusta jugarlo.
6. ¿Le gusta hablar a él inglés?
Sí, le gusta hablar inglés.
7. ¿Cuál hotel te gusta recomendar?
Me gusta recomendar "Casa Rosada."
8. ¿Les gusta caminar a Uds.?
Sí, nos gusta caminar aquí en San Miguel.
9. ¿Adónde les gusta ir a Uds. los domingos?
Nos gusta ir al campo.
10. ¿Te gusta viajar en verano?
No, me gusta viajar en invierno.
11. ¿Les gusta hacer a los mexicanos fiestas?
Sí, les gusta hacerlas.
12. ¿Qué le gusta cocinar a Ud.?
Me gusta cocinar comida italiana.
13. ¿Cuándo te gusta leer?
Me gusta leer en la cama antes de dormir.
14. ¿Qué le gusta tomar a tu amigo?
Le gusta tomar vino tinto.
15. ¿Qué clase de música te gusta escuchar?
Me gusta escuchar música de rock.
16. ¿Qué le gusta ver a tu esposa en la tele?
Le gusta ver las telenovelas.
1. Does he like to dance?
Yes, he likes to dance the cumbia.
2. What time do you all like to eat?
We like to eat at noon.
3. Do you all like to sing?
No, we don't like to sing much.
4. Do you (*tú*) like to play an instrument?
Yes, I like to play the guitar.
5. Do you (*Ud.*) like to play tennis?
Yes, I like to play it.
6. Does he like to speak English?
Yes, he likes to speak English.
7. What hotel do you (*tú*) like to recommend?
I like to recommend Casa Rosada.
8. Do you all like to walk?
Yes, we like to walk in San Miguel.
9. Where do you all like to go on Sundays?
We like to go to the country.
10. Do you (*tú*) like to travel during the summer?
No, I like to travel during the winter.
11. Do the Mexicans like to have parties?
Yes, they like to have them.
12. What do you (*Ud.*) like to cook?
I like to cook Italian food.
13. When do you (*tú*) like to read?
I like to read in bed before sleeping.
14. What does your friend like to drink?
He likes to drink red wine.
15. What kind of music do you like to listen to?
I like to listen to rock music.
16. What does your wife like to watch on TV?
She likes to watch soap operas.

gustar	
a mí me gusta	a nosotros nos gusta
a tí te gusta	
a él, ella, Ud. le gusta	ellos, ellas, Uds. les gusta

So far, we have used *gustar* to express what we like **to do**. We have been connecting *gustar* with verbs which are all singular, and so we have only used the *gusta* form.

When we use *gustar* to express that we like certain **things**, *gustar* changes to agree with singular or plural.

Me gusta la manzana. (singular)

Me gustan las manzanas. (plural)

Notice that when what someone likes is plural, the verb changes to the *they-form* (*gustan*), and literally translates as **they are pleasing to ____.**

A José le gustan las clases. =

The classes (they) are pleasing to José.
(José likes the classes).

Nos gustan las flores. =

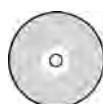
The flowers (they) are pleasing to us.
(We like the flowers.)



answers on next page

Remember if the thing we like is plural, we use *gustan*.

1. I like the coffee. _____
2. We like the dessert. _____
3. I like the tacos. _____
4. She likes the soup. _____ la sopa
5. They (*m*) like the trip. _____ el viaje
6. I like the appetizers. _____ las botanas
7. I like the food. _____
8. We like the grapes. _____ las uvas
9. Carlos likes that song. _____
10. We like the cake. _____ el pastel
11. I like the lemonade. _____ la limonada
12. My wife likes the earrings. _____ los aretes
13. I don't like the onions. _____ las cebollas
14. She doesn't like hot [spicy] food. _____
15. I like the red bag. _____ bolsa roja
16. They (*m*) like the countryside. _____
17. We like the cold beer. _____
18. Jose likes the classes. _____
19. My friends like this neighborhood. _____
20. The children like the sweets. _____



A

to previous page

As a spoken exercise translate the Spanish column into English, then the English column into Spanish.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Me gusta el café. | 1. I like the coffee. |
| 2. Nos gusta el postre. | 2. We like the dessert. |
| 3. Me gustan los tacos. | 3. I like the tacos. |
| 4. A ella le gusta la sopa. | 4. She likes the soup. |
| 5. A ellos les gusta el viaje. | 5. They (<i>m</i>) like the trip. |
| 6. Me gustan las botanas. | 6. I like the appetizers. |
| 7. Me gusta la comida. | 7. I like the food. |
| 8. Nos gustan las uvas. | 8. We like the grapes. |
| 9. A Carlos le gusta esa canción. | 9. Carlos likes that song. |
| 10. Nos gusta el pastel. | 10. We like the cake. |
| 11. Me gusta la limonada. | 11. I like the lemonade. |
| 12. A mi esposa le gustan los aretes. | 12. My wife likes the earrings. |
| 13. No me gustan las cebollas. | 13. I don't like the onions. |
| 14. A ella no le gusta la comida picante. | 14. She doesn't like hot (spicy) food. |
| 15. Me gusta la bolsa roja. | 15. I like the red bag. |
| 16. A ellos les gusta el campo. | 16. They (<i>m</i>) like the countryside. |
| 17. Nos gusta la cerveza fría. | 17. We like the cold beer. |
| 18. A José le gustan las clases. | 18. José likes the classes. |
| 19. A mis amigos les gusta esta colonia. | 19. My friends like this neighborhood. |
| 20. A los niños les gustan los dulces. | 20. The children like the sweets. |

GUSTAR with people

We usually don't say *me gusta* to express our liking a person. In Mexico, when you want to say 'I like you,' you use the idiomatic expression:

Me caes bien. =

You fall well on me. (I like you)

Él no me cae bien. =

He doesn't fall well on me.
(I don't like him)

No te caigo bien (a él). =

I don't fall well on him.
(He doesn't like me.)

110 Vocabulary quiz

Q

answers on page 84



59 possible

- _____ wrong

_____ total score

If you got 47 correct, congratulations!
Retest yourself on the items you missed.

1. quickly _____
2. the movie _____
3. traveler's check _____
4. a soft drink _____
5. frequently _____
6. [the] dessert _____
7. a bottle _____
8. red wine _____
9. the sheets _____
10. the rent _____
11. the tequila _____
12. Chinese _____
13. an aspirin _____
14. the ruins _____
15. the guests _____
16. your boyfriend _____
17. football (soccer) _____
18. the drinks _____
19. the front (reception) desk _____
20. to the airport _____
21. various, several _____
22. from _____
23. a cake _____
24. for sure _____
25. brother _____
26. on time _____
27. the library _____
28. permission _____
29. at noon _____
30. to the country _____
31. different _____
32. the bed _____
33. the television _____
34. the soap operas _____
35. the soup _____
36. the trip _____
37. the appetizers _____
38. the grapes _____
39. the lemonade _____
40. the earrings _____
41. fifteen minutes ago _____
42. one _____
43. two _____
44. three _____
45. four _____
46. five _____
47. six _____
48. seven _____
49. eight _____
50. nine _____
51. ten _____
52. fifteen _____
53. Monday _____
54. Tuesday _____
55. Wednesday _____
56. Thursday _____
57. Friday _____
58. Saturday _____
59. Sunday _____

Section VI

REFLEXIVE VERBS

Now you will learn some reflexive verbs, which in the infinitive form end with -se. See the next page for an explanation of how reflexive verbs are used. Memorize the verbs listed below, using the memory tips at the bottom of the page.

Test yourself by covering first the English column and translating from Spanish to English. Then cover the Spanish column and translate from English to Spanish.



Then use the yellow Verbcards and make a 'know' and a 'don't know' pile. Go through the cards until your 'don't know' pile disappears.

Reflexive verbs

acostarse to lie down, go to bed

bañarse to bathe oneself

caerse to fall down

divertirse to have fun

enfermarse to get sick

lavarse to wash oneself

levantarse to get up

quedarse to remain, stay

mudarse to move (household)

preocuparse to worry

sentarse to sit down

Read each memory tip completely and out loud. Let the rhythm of the tip register in your mind.

ACOSTARSE = to lie down — **A COAST LIES DOWN** on the side of a country.
acostarse = to lie down.

BAÑARSE = to bathe oneself— Looks like **BATHE**.
bañarse = to bathe oneself.

CAERSE = to fall down — **KAI FELL** through the **AIR**.
caerse = to fall down.

DIVERTIRSE = to have fun — When you HAVE FUN, you **DIVERT** yourself.
divertirse = to have fun.

ENFERMARSE = to get sick — Looks like **INFIRM**.
enfermarse = to get sick.

LAVARSE = to wash oneself — **WASH** yourself in the **LAVATORY**.
lavarse = to wash oneself.

LEVANTARSE = to get up — Looks like **LEVITATE**.
levantarse = to get up .

QUEDARSE = to remain, stay — **A CADENCE** is a rhythm that REMAINS or STAYS the same.
quedarse = to remain, stay.

MUDARSE = to move (household) — Sounds like **MOVE**.
mudarse = to move (household).

PREOCUPARSE = to worry — Looks like **PREOCCUPY**.
preocuparse = to worry.

SENTARSE = to sit down — He **SAT** in the **TAR**.
sentarse = to sit down.

114 Using reflexive verbs

A reflexive verb is a verb that acts upon the person doing the action. It will usually translate as “to do to oneself,” i.e. “to bathe oneself,” or “to dress oneself.” Reflexive verbs are very important because you can’t portray doing anything to yourself without them.

Some verbs can be both normal and reflexive, i.e.,
bañar = to bathe

Voy a bañar a mi hijo. = I’m going to bathe my child.

bañarse = to bathe oneself
Voy a bañarme. = I’m going to bathe myself.

Notice that the *-me* is attached to the infinitive and means ‘myself.’ This is a reflexive pronoun. The reflexive pronouns are:

-me = myself	-nos = ourselves
-te = yourself (<i>tú</i>)	
-se = himself, herself = yourself (<i>Ud.</i>)	-se = themselves (<i>m, f</i>) = yourselves

The reflexive pronoun
 1) attaches to the infinitive
 2) agrees with the subject

Remember that the subject and the reflexive pronoun must agree:

yo ... -me	nosotros ... -nos
tú ... -te	
él, ella, Ud ... -se	ellos, ellas, Uds ... -se

Here are some examples of reflexive pronouns using the verb *bañarse*.

Voy a bañarme = I’m going to bathe (myself).

Vas a bañarte = You’re going to bathe (yourself).

Él va a bañarse = He’s going to bathe (himself).

Ella va a bañarse = She’s going to bathe (herself).

Ud. va a bañarse = You’re going to bathe (yourself).

Vamos a bañarnos = We’re going to bathe (ourselves).

Ellos van a bañarse. = They (*m*) are going to bathe (themselves).

Ellas van a bañarse. = They (*f*) are going to bathe (themselves).

Uds. van a bañarse. = You all are going to bathe (yourselves).

1. Notice how the reflexive pronoun must agree with the subject of the verb:

María necesitar levantarse.

Maria needs to get (herself) up.

2. Notice that the *-se* represents both the third person singular and plural:

el, ella, Ud. = *-se*

ellos, ellas, Uds. = *-se*

3. Sometimes in the 3rd person (*él, ella, Ud., ellos, ellas, Uds.*) it is necessary to clarify who the *-se* represents with subject pronouns.

El necesita bañarse.

Uds. necesitan bañarse.

4. Here are some sentences with reflexive verbs. Notice that the reflexive pronoun attaches to the infinitive and agrees with the subject:

Queremos sentarnos aquí.

We want to sit here.

¿A qué hora vas a levantarte?

What time are you going to get up?

Ella quiere acostarse temprano.

She wants to go to bed early.

LAVARSE with parts of the body

In Spanish we don’t wash “my hands” or “your hands.” Instead we say:

I’m going to wash my(self the) hands.

Voy a lavarme las manos.

NOT ... mis manos

I’m going to wash my(self the) teeth.

Voy a lavarme los dientes.

I’m going to wash my(self the) face.

Voy a lavarme la cara.

I’m going to wash my(self the) hair.

Voy a lavarme el pelo.

Now do the written exercises on the following pages.

(yo) ... me	(nosotros) ... nos
(tú) ... te	
(él, ella, Ud.) ... se	(ellos, ellas, Uds.) ... se

Fill in the blank with the reflexive pronoun that agrees with the verb, then translate into English. **answers below**

- Quiero acostar me ahora.
- Necesito lavar _____ las manos.
- Él va a sentar _____ aquí.
- Vamos a mudar _____ a México.
- Ella puede quedar _____ con su madre.
- No tengo que preocupar _____.
- Vamos a acostar _____ a las diez.
- Ellos van a divertir _____ mucho.
- María quiere bañar _____ ahora.
- Uds. no van a caer _____.



to exercise above

As a spoken exercise translate the Spanish column into English, then the English column into Spanish.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Quiero acostarme ahora. | 1. I want to lie down now. |
| 2. Necesito lavarme las manos. | 2. I need to wash my hands. |
| 3. Él va a sentarse aquí. | 3. He is going to sit here. |
| 4. Vamos a mudarnos a México. | 4. We're going to move to Mexico. |
| 5. Ella puede quedarse con su madre. | 5. She can stay with her mother. |
| 6. No tengo que preocuparme. | 6. I don't have to worry |
| 7. Vamos a acostarnos a las diez. | 7. We're going to go to bed at ten. |
| 8. Ellos van a divertirse mucho. | 8. They're going to have a lot of fun. |
| 9. María quiere bañarse ahora. | 9. Maria wants to bathe now. |
| 10. Uds. no van a caerse. | 10. You all aren't going to fall. |

Vocabulary preparation



This is the vocabulary that will be used in the following section.

Study it, highlight difficult words, then do the exercises on the next pages.

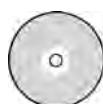


- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. acostarse to lie down, go to bed | 11. sentarse to sit down |
| 2. bañarse to bathe oneself | 12. las manos the hands |
| 3. caerse to fall down | 13. los dientes the teeth |
| 4. divertirse to have fun | 14. el pelo the hair |
| 5. enfermarse to get sick | |
| 6. lavarse to wash oneself | 15. por supuesto of course |
| 7. levantarse to get up | 16. a medianoche ... at midnight |
| 8. quedarse to remain, stay | 17. el próximo año .. next year |
| 9. mudarse to move (household) | 18. la primera fila the first row |
| 10. preocuparse to worry | 19. un hotel a hotel |



answers on next page

1. Where do you (*tú*) want to sit down? _____
I want to sit down here. _____
2. Are you (*tú*) going to go to bed now? _____
Yes, I'm going to go to bed now. _____
3. Do you (*tú*) need to wash your hands? _____ las manos
Yes, I need to wash them. _____ lavármelas
4. Do you (*tú*) want to get sick? _____
No, I don't want to get sick. _____
5. When is he going to bathe himself? _____
He is going to bathe himself tomorrow. _____
6. At what time do they (*m*) have to get up? _____
They have to get up at 6:00 AM. _____
7. Are they (*f*) going to have fun? _____
Of course, they're going to have fun. _____ por supuesto
8. At what time do we have to go to bed? _____
We have to go to bed at midnight. _____ a media noche
9. Are you (*tú*) going to brush your teeth before eating? _____ los dientes
No, I'm going to brush them after eating. _____ lavármelos
10. When is Carolina going to move to Mexico? _____
She is going to move next year. _____ el año próximo
11. Are we going to get sick? _____
No, you're not going to get sick. _____
12. Do you (*Ud.*) like to sit in the first row? _____ la primera fila
Yes, I like to sit there. _____
13. Do they (*m*) want to lie down now? _____
Yes, they want to lie down. _____
14. You're (*tú*) going to fall down! _____
No, I'm not going to fall down. _____
15. Are you all going to stay in a hotel? _____ en un hotel
No, we're going to stay at a friend's house. _____



A

to previous page

As a spoken exercise translate the Spanish column into English,
then the English column into Spanish.

1. ¿Dónde quieres sentarte?
Quiero sentarme aquí.
2. ¿Vas a acostarte ahora?
Sí, voy a acostarme ahora.
3. ¿Necesitas lavarte las manos?
Sí, necesito lavármelas.
4. ¿Quieres enfermarte?
No, no quiero enfermarme.
5. ¿Cuándo va a bañarse él?
Va a bañarse mañana.
6. ¿A qué hora tienen que leventarse ellos?
Tienen que levantarse a las seis de la mañana.
7. ¿Van a divertirse ellas?
Por supuesto, van a divertirse.
8. ¿A qué hora tenemos que acostarnos?
Tenemos que acostarnos a medianoche.
9. ¿Vas a lavarte los dientes antes de comer?
No, voy a lavármelos después de comer.
10. ¿Cuándo va a mudarse Carolina a México?
Va a mudarse el próximo año.
11. ¿Vamos a enfermarnos?
No, no van a enfermarse.
12. ¿Le gusta sentarse a Ud. en la primera fila?
Sí, me gusta sentarme allí.
13. ¿Quieren acostarse ellos ahora?
Sí, quieren acostarse.
14. ¡Vas a caerte!
No, no voy a caerme.
15. ¿Van a quedarse Uds. en un hotel?
No, vamos a quedarnos en la casa de un amigo.
1. Where do you (*tú*) want to sit down?
I want to sit down here.
2. Are you (*tú*) going to go to bed now?
Yes, I'm going to go to bed now.
3. Do you (*tú*) need to wash your hands?
Yes, I need to wash them.
4. Do you (*tú*) want to get sick?
No, I don't want to get sick.
5. When is he going to bathe (himself)?
He's going to bathe (himself) tomorrow.
6. At what time do they (*m*) have to get up?
They have to get up at 6:00 A.M.
7. Are they (*f*) going to have fun?
Of course, they're going to have fun.
8. At what time do we have to go to bed?
We have to go to bed at midnight.
9. Are you (*tú*) going to brush your teeth before eating?
No, I'm going to brush them after eating.
10. When is Carolina going to move to Mexico?
She is going to move next year.
11. Are we going to get sick?
No, you're not going to get sick.
12. Do you (*Ud.*) like to sit in the first row?
Yes, I like to sit there.
13. Do they (*m*) want to lie down now?
Yes, they want to lie down.
14. You're (*tú*) going to fall down!
No, I'm not going to fall down.
15. Are you all going to stay in a hotel?
No, we're going to stay at a friend's house.

Vocabulary quiz



19 possible

- _____ wrong

_____ total score

If you got 15 correct, congratulations!
Retest yourself on the items you missed.



answers on page 115

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. to lie down, go to bed _____ | 11. to sit down _____ |
| 2. to bathe oneself _____ | 12. [the] hands _____ |
| 3. to fall down _____ | 13. [the] teeth _____ |
| 4. to have fun _____ | 14. [the] hair _____ |
| 5. to get sick _____ | 15. of course _____ |
| 6. to wash oneself _____ | 16. at midnight _____ |
| 7. to get up _____ | 17. next year _____ |
| 8. to remain, stay _____ | 18. the first row _____ |
| 9. to move (household) _____ | 19. a hotel _____ |
| 10. to worry _____ | |

Section VII

SER and ESTAR

In English we have only one verb for 'to be.'
In Spanish we have two, *ser* and *estar*.

IN ENGLISH WE SAY	IN SPANISH WE SAY
I am American.	Soy americano -a.
I am rich.	Soy rico -a.
I am sick.	Estoy enfermo -a.
I am here.	Estoy aquí.

Notice with "I am American." and "I am rich," we used the verb *ser* because

Ser describes how things are.

It LABELS things:

Maria is pretty.	<i>Maria es bonita.</i>
The house is big.	<i>La casa es grande.</i>
The shirt is small.	<i>La camisa es pequeña.</i>
It is blue.	<i>Es azul.</i>
The car is new.	<i>El coche es nuevo.</i>

Occupation/avocation:

I am a professor.	<i>Soy profesor.</i>
I am a tourist.	<i>Soy turista.</i>
I am a student.	<i>Soy estudiante.</i>

Relationship:

We are friends.	<i>Somos amigos.</i>
He is my brother.	<i>Él es mi hermano.</i>

Notice with "I am sick." and "I am here." we used the verb *estar*. This is because

Estar tells how we FEEL ...

How are you?	<i>¿Cómo estás?</i>
I am fine.	<i>Estoy bien.</i>
She is sick.	<i>Ella está enferma.</i>
I am satisfied.	<i>Estoy satisfecho/-a.</i>

... and where we're LOCATED.

Where are you ?	<i>¿Dónde estás?</i>
I am in my house.	<i>Estoy en mi casa.</i>
It is on the table.	<i>Está en la mesa.</i>

1. Estar goes with 'how' (*cómo*) and 'where' (*dónde*).

How is? feelings *¿Cómo está ...?*
Where is....? location *¿Dónde está ...?*

2. When describing how something is **in particular or at the moment, use *estar*.**

Maria está bonita esta noche. =
Maria is [particularly] pretty tonight.

Maria es bonita =
Maria is pretty [always].

La comida está deliciosa. =
The food [which I am eating now] is delicious.

3. Some adjectives subtly change meanings with *ser* or *estar*.

She is ready *Ella está lista.*
She is smart. *Ella es lista.*

Look how things agree according to masculine & feminine and singular & plural.

The car is red. *El coche es rojo.*
The cars are red. *Los coches son rojos.*

The house is white. *La casa es blanca.*
The houses are white. *Las casas son blancas.*

He is sick. *Él está enfermo.*
She is sick. *Ella está enferma.*
They (m) are sick. *Ellos están enfermos.*
They (f) are sick. *Ellas están enfermas.*

When in doubt, ask yourself:

Is this how someone FEELS or where someone or something is LOCATED?
- Use **ESTAR**.

Is this a description of someone or something that has permanence?
- Use **SER**.

**This simple formula
will work most of the time.**

Look at the chart on the next page, then go on to the written exercises.

SER

I am	Yo SOY	Nosotros SOMOS	
You (<i>tú</i>) are	Tú ERES		We are
He is	Él ES	Ellos SON	They (<i>m</i>) are
She is	Ella ES	Ellas SON	They (<i>f</i>) are
You (<i>Ud.</i>) are	Ud. ES	Uds. SON	You all are

SER

describes things - tells HOW or WHAT something IS ... and is used for TIME.

1. HOW or WHAT something is**Permanent quality (sizes, colors, etc.)**

Las casas son grandes. The houses are large.

Los coches son rojos. The cars are red.

Ownership or relationship

Es mi dinero. It is my money.

Es mío. It is mine.

Son hermanos. They are brothers.

Profession, occupation or avocation

Soy maestro. I am a teacher.

Ella es turista, estudiante. She is a tourist, a student.

Nationality

Soy americano/a. I am American.

Soy canadiense. I am Canadian.

Son mexicanos/as. They are Mexican.

2. TIME, DAYS, MONTHS (ETC.)

¿Qué hora es? What time is it?

Es la una. Son las dos. It is one o'clock. It is two o'clock.

Hoy es domingo. Today is Sunday.

La Navidad es el 25 de Diciembre. Christmas is December 25.

ESTAR

I am	Yo ESTOY	Nosotros ESTAMOS	We are
You (<i>tú</i>) are	Tú ESTÁS		
He is	Él ESTÁ	Ellos ESTÁN	They (<i>m</i>) are
She is	Ella ESTÁ	Ellas ESTÁN	They (<i>f</i>) are
You (<i>Ud.</i>) are	Usted ESTÁ	Ustedes ESTÁN	You all are

ESTAR
tells how someone FEELS
and where something is LOCATED.

1. HEALTH-EMOTION (how we feel)

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>¿Cómo está?</i> | How are you? |
| <i>Estoy bien, mal.</i> | I am well, not well |
| <i>Estoy contento/a.</i> | I am content. |
| <i>Estoy cansado/a.</i> | I am tired. |
| <i>Estoy enfermo/a.</i> | I am sick. |

2. LOCATION (where we are)

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>¿Dónde están Uds.?</i> | Where are you all? |
| <i>Estamos en casa.</i> | We are at home. |
| <i>La llave está en la puerta.</i> | The key is in the door. |
| <i>El banco está cerca.</i> | The bank is nearby. |
| <i>Cancún está en México.</i> | Cancun is in Mexico. |

3. TEMPORARY CONDITIONS

- | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>El café está caliente.</i> | The coffee is hot. |
| <i>La ropa está sucia.</i> | The clothes are dirty. |
| <i>Las puertas están cerradas.</i> | The doors are closed. |

124 Ser conjugation

ser	
soy	somos
eres	
es	son

Now let's conjugate SER in the present tense.

Fill in the blank with the correct form of *ser*. **answers on page 126**

- | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. Yo _____ | 8. Ella _____ | 15. Tú _____ |
| 2. Ellos _____ | 9. Los mexicanos _____ | 16. Uds. _____ |
| 3. Él _____ | 10. Tú y yo _____ | 17. Ellos _____ |
| 4. Tú _____ | 11. Carlos y María _____ | 18. Él _____ |
| 5. Nosotros _____ | 12. Ud. _____ | 19. María _____ |
| 6. Carlos _____ | 13. Yo _____ | 20. Él y yo _____ |
| 7. Uds. _____ | 14. Nosotros _____ | 21. Tú y yo _____ |

Fill in the blank with the correct form of *ser* and then translate the whole sentence into English. Notice how *ser* describes how or what something is. **answers on page 126**

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. (Yo) _____ americano/-a. | 1. <i>I am American.</i> . |
| 2. (Nosotros) _____ amigos. | 2. _____ . |
| 3. (Ellos) _____ hombres. | 3. _____ . |
| 4. Carlos _____ maestro. | 4. _____ . |
| 5. San Miguel _____ pintoresco. | 5. _____ . |
| 6. Carlos y María _____ hermanos. | 6. _____ . |
| 7. María _____ muy bonita. (always) | 7. _____ . |
| 8. La casa _____ muy grande. | 8. _____ . |
| 9. Hoy _____ martes. | 9. _____ . |
| 10. (Ud.) _____ muy amable. | 10. _____ . |
| 11. Mi coche _____ rojo. | 11. _____ . |
| 12. (Nosotros) _____ turistas. | 12. _____ . |
| 13. (Yo) _____ artista. | 13. _____ . |
| 14. Él y yo _____ de Nueva York. | 14. _____ . |
| 15. _____ las nueve. | 15. _____ . |

estar	
estoy	estamos
estás	
está	están

Now let's learn to conjugate *ESTAR* in the present tense.

Fill in the blank with the correct form of *estar*. **answers on page 126**

- | | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. Yo <u>estoy</u> _____ | 8. Ella _____ | 15. Tú _____ |
| 2. Ellos _____ | 9. Los mexicanos _____ | 16. Uds. _____ |
| 3. Él _____ | 10. Tú y yo _____ | 17. Ellos _____ |
| 4. Tú _____ | 11. Carlos y María _____ | 18. Él _____ |
| 5. Nosotros _____ | 12. Ud. _____ | 19. María _____ |
| 6. Carlos _____ | 13. Yo _____ | 20. Él y yo _____ |
| 7. Uds. _____ | 14. Nosotros _____ | 21. Tú y yo _____ |

Fill in the blank with the correct form of *estar* and then translate the whole sentence into English. Notice how *estar* indicates how someone feels, where something is or temporary conditions. **answers on page 126**

- | | |
|--|--------------------------|
| 1. ¿Cómo <u>estás</u> (tú)? | 1. <u>How are you?</u> . |
| 2. (Yo) _____ muy bien. | 2. _____ . |
| 3. (Ellos) _____ enfermos. (sick) | 3. _____ . |
| 4. Carlos _____ triste. (sad) | 4. _____ . |
| 5. San Miguel _____ en México. | 5. _____ . |
| 6. Las bolsa _____ en la mesa. | 6. _____ . |
| 7. (Él) _____ borracho. (drunk) | 7. _____ . |
| 8. (Yo) _____ satisfecho/-a. | 8. _____ . |
| 9. El café _____ caliente/frío. (hot/cold) | 9. _____ . |
| 10. La tienda _____ abierta/cerrada. (open/closed) | 10. _____ . |
| 11. (Yo) _____ en mi casa. | 11. _____ . |
| 12. (Nosotros) _____ aquí. | 12. _____ . |
| 13. ¿ _____ (tú) seguro/a? | 13. _____ . |
| 14. El y yo _____ en el hotel. | 14. _____ . |
| 15. La cocina _____ limpia/sucia. (clean/dirty) | 15. _____ . |

126 Ser and Estar conjugation answers

A

to page 124 (*ser*)

- | | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Yo _____ soy | 8. Ella _____ es | 15. Tú _____ eres |
| 2. Ellos _____ son | 9. Los mexicanos _____ son | 16. Uds. _____ son |
| 3. Él _____ es | 10. Tú y yo _____ somos | 17. Ellos _____ son |
| 4. Tú _____ eres | 11. Carlos y María _____ son | 18. Él _____ es |
| 5. Nosotros _____ somos | 12. Ud. _____ es | 19. María _____ es |
| 6. Carlos _____ es | 13. Yo _____ soy | 20. Él y yo _____ somos |
| 7. Uds. _____ son | 14. Nosotros _____ somos | 21. Tú y yo _____ somos |

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. (Yo) soy americano/-a. | 1. I am American. |
| 2. (Nosotros) somos amigos. | 2. We are friends. |
| 3. (Ellos) son hombres. | 3. They are men. |
| 4. Carlos es maestro. | 4. Carlos is a teacher. |
| 5. San Miguel es pintoresco. | 5. San Miguel is picturesque. |
| 6. Carlos y María son hermanos. | 6. Carlos and Maria are siblings. |
| 7. María es muy bonita. | 7. Maria is very pretty. |
| 8. La casa es muy grande. | 8. The house is very large. |
| 9. Hoy es martes. | 9. Today is Tuesday. |
| 10. (Ud.) es muy amable. | 10. You are very kind. |
| 11. Mi coche es rojo. | 11. My car is red. |
| 12. (Nosotros) somos turistas. | 12. We are tourists. |
| 13. (Yo) soy artista. | 13. I am an artist. |
| 14. Él y yo somos de Nueva York. | 14. He and I are from New York. |
| 15. Son las nueve. | 15. It is nine o'clock. |

A

to page 125 (*estar*)

- | | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Yo _____ estoy | 8. Ella _____ está | 15. Tú _____ estás |
| 2. Ellos _____ están | 9. Los mexicanos _____ están | 16. Uds. _____ están |
| 3. Él _____ está | 10. Tú y yo _____ estamos | 17. Ellos _____ están |
| 4. Tú _____ estás | 11. Carlos y María _____ están | 18. Él _____ está |
| 5. Nosotros _____ estamos | 12. Ud. _____ está | 19. María _____ está |
| 6. Carlos _____ está | 13. Yo _____ estoy | 20. Él y yo _____ estamos |
| 7. Uds. _____ están | 14. Nosotros _____ estamos | 21. Tú y yo _____ estamos |

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 1. ¿Cómo estás (tú)? | 1. How are you (tú)? |
| 2. (Yo) estoy muy bien. | 2. I am very well. |
| 3. (Ellos) están enfermos. | 3. They are sick. |
| 4. Carlos está triste. | 4. Carlos is sad. |
| 5. San Miguel está en México. | 5. San Miguel is in Mexico. |
| 6. Las bolsas están en la mesa. | 6. The bags are on the table. |
| 7. (Él) está borracho. | 7. He is drunk. |
| 8. (Yo) estoy satisfecho/-a. | 8. I am satisfied. |
| 9. El café está caliente/frío. | 9. The coffee is hot/cold. |
| 10. La tienda está abierta/cerrada. | 10. The store is open/closed. |
| 11. (Yo) estoy en mi casa. | 11. I am at my house. |
| 12. (Nosotros) estamos aquí. | 12. We are here. |
| 13. ¿Estás (tú) seguro/-a? | 13. Are you (tú) sure? |
| 14. Él y yo estamos en el hotel. | 14. He and I are at the hotel. |
| 15. La cocina está limpia/sucia. | 15. The kitchen is clean/dirty. |

**Q**

This is a timed exercise. Set your clock for one minute for each side.

Cover the conjugated form and conjugate the verb orally according to the subject.

SER

Yo _____
Tú _____
Él _____
Ella _____
Ud. _____
Nosotros _____
Ellos _____
Ellas _____
Uds. _____
Él _____
Yo _____
Ellos _____
Tú _____
Carlos _____
Carlos y él _____
Tú y yo _____
Ud. _____
Nosotros _____
Yo _____
Tú _____
Ella _____
Los mexicanos _____
Yo _____
Los americanos _____
El perro _____
El libro _____
Mis libros _____
Mis amigos _____
Nosotros _____
Ud. _____

SOY
ERES
ES
ES
ES
SOMOS
SON
SON
SON
ES
SOY
SON
ERES
ES
SOMOS
ES
SOMOS
SOY
ERES
ES
SON
SOY
SON
SOMOS
ES
SOMOS
SOY
Tú _____
Él _____
Ella _____
Uds. _____
Yo _____
Ellos _____
Tú _____
Carlos _____
Carlos y María _____
Tú y yo _____
Ud. _____
Nosotros _____
Yo _____
Tú _____
Ella _____
Los mexicanos _____
Yo _____
Los americanos _____
El perro _____
El libro _____
Mis libros _____
Mis amigos _____
Nosotros _____
Ud. _____

ESTAR

Yo _____
Tú _____
Él _____
Ella _____
Ud. _____
Nosotros _____
Ellos _____
Ellas _____
Uds. _____
Él _____
Yo _____
Ellos _____
Tú _____
Carlos _____
Carlos y María _____
Tú y yo _____
Ud. _____
Nosotros _____
Yo _____
Tú _____
Ella _____
Los mexicanos _____
Yo _____
Los americanos _____
El perro _____
El libro _____
Mis libros _____
Mis amigos _____
Nosotros _____
Ud. _____

128 Ser vs. Estar

ser	
soy	somos
eres	
es	son

estar	
estoy	estamos
estás	
está	están

SER

DESCRIBES IDENTITY - HOW OR WHAT SOMETHING IS, AND TIME

1. Inherent quality (size, color, etc.)
2. Ownership or relationship
3. Profession -- occupation, avocation
4. Nationality -- origin
5. Time -- day -- month

Fill in the correct form of *ser* or *estar*, then translate the sentence and indicate the reason for using *ser* or *estar* by referring to the numbers above. **answers on next page**

1. Está abierto el mercado?
No, está cerrado.

2. ¿Cómo _____ (tú)?
(Yo) _____ bien, gracias.

3. ¿_____ ellos mexicanos?
Sí, _____ mexicanos.

4. ¿Quién _____ su doctor?
El Dr. López _____ mi doctor.

5. ¿Dónde _____ su dinero?

en mi bolsa.

6. ¿Qué hora _____ ?

las ocho.

7. ¿De dónde _____ Ud.? (from where)

de los Estados Unidos.

8. ¿De quién _____ el libro? (whose)

mi libro.

9. ¿Dónde _____ (tú)?
(Yo) _____ en la casa.

10. _____ grande tu casa? (large)
No, _____ pequeña. (small)

11. _____ Uds. hermanos? (brothers)
No, (nosotros) _____ amigos.

12. ¿Qué día _____ hoy?
Hoy _____ martes. (Tuesday)

13. ¿_____ (tú) contento, -a?
Sí, _____ muy contento, -a.

14. ¿_____ rojo su coche? (red)
No, _____ negro. (black)

ESTAR

DESCRIBES HOW YOU FEEL, WHERE YOU ARE LOCATED, AND TEMPORARY CONDITIONS

6. Feelings, health, emotion
7. Location or position
8. Temporary condition

1. Is the market open?
No, it is closed. 1. __

2. _____ 2. __

3. _____ 3. __

4. _____ 4. __

5. _____ 5. __

6. _____ 6. __

7. _____ 7. __

8. _____ 8. __

9. _____ 9. __

10. _____ 10. __

11. _____ 11. __

12. _____ 12. __

13. _____ 13. __

14. _____ 14. __

**A**[to previous page](#)

1. ¿Está abierto el mercado?
No, está cerrado.

2. ¿Cómo estás (tú)?
(Yo) estoy bien, gracias.

3. ¿Son ellos mexicanos?
Sí, son mexicanos.

4. ¿Quién es su doctor?
El Dr. López es mi doctor.

5. ¿Dónde está su dinero?
Está en mi bolsa.

6. ¿Qué hora es?
Son las ocho.

7. ¿De dónde es Ud.?
Soy de los Estados Unidos.

8. ¿De quién es el libro?
Es mi libro.

9. ¿Dónde estás (tú)?
(Yo) estoy en la casa.

10. Es grande tu casa?
No, es pequeña.

11. Son Uds. hermanos?
No, (nosotros) somos amigos.

12. ¿Qué día es hoy?
Hoy es martes.

13. ¿Estás (tú) contento/-a?
Sí, estoy muy contento/-a.

14. ¿Es rojo su coche?
No, es negro.

1. Is the market open? 1. 8
No, it is closed.

2. How are you? 2. 6
I'm well, thank you.

3. ¿Are they Mexicans? 3. 4
Yes, they are Mexicans.

4. Who is your doctor? 4. 3
Dr. López is my doctor.

5. Where is your money? 5. 7
It is in my bag.

6. What time is it? 6. 5
It's eight o'clock.

7. Where are you from? 7. 4
I am from the United States.

8. Whose book is it? 8. 2
It is my book.

9. Where are you? 9. 7
I am in the house.

10. Is your house large? 10. 1
No, it is small.

11. Are you brothers? 11. 2
No, we're friends.

12. What day is today? 12. 5
Today is Tuesday.

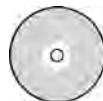
13. Are you content? 13. 6
Yes, I'm very content.

14. Is your car red? 14. 1
No, it is black.

Section VIII

GENERAL REVIEW

Quizzes and Final Exam



rolodexing



As you get more comfortable with conjugating, you will probably experience what I call 'rolodexing.' For example,

You may want to use a verb form such as 'we need.'

Your mind will first go to the infinitive form of the Spanish verb, *necesitar*.

Then you will conjugate through the different persons: *necesito*, *necesitas*, *necesita*, *necesitamos* - 'rolodexing' the verb forms until the one you want clicks in, i.e., *necesitamos*.

This phenomenon of 'rolodexing' begins to occur at the conversational level when you are forming sentences with different subjects and in different tenses.

Look at the verb forms below and read them aloud in Spanish (rolodexing them) until the patterns stick in your mind. Write them until you can do it perfectly.

NECESITAR - TO NEED

necesito _____	I need _____
necesitas _____	You (<i>tú</i>) need _____
necesita _____	You (<i>Ud.</i>) need _____ He/she needs _____
necesitamos _____	We need _____
necesitan _____	They need _____ You all need _____

PODER - TO BE ABLE (I CAN, ETC.)

puedo _____	I can _____
puedes _____	You (<i>tú</i>) can _____
puede _____	You (<i>Ud.</i>) can _____ He/she can _____
podemos _____	We can _____
pueden _____	They can _____ You all can _____

QUERER - TO WANT

quiero _____	I want _____
quieres _____	You (<i>tú</i>) want _____
quiere _____	You (<i>Ud.</i>) want _____ He/she wants _____
queremos _____	We want _____
quieren _____	They want _____ You all want _____

GUSTAR - TO BE PLEASING (I LIKE, ETC.)

me gusta _____	I like _____
te gusta _____	You (<i>tú</i>) like _____
le gusta _____	You (<i>Ud.</i>) like _____ He/she likes _____
nos gusta _____	We like _____
les gusta _____	They like _____ You all like _____

IR - TO GO

voy _____	I am going _____
Vas _____	You (<i>tú</i>) are going _____
va _____	You (<i>Ud.</i>) are going _____ He/she is going _____
vamos _____	We are going _____
van _____	They are going _____ You all are going _____

TENER QUE - TO HAVE TO

tengo que _____	I have to _____
tienes que _____	You (<i>tú</i>) have to _____
tiene que _____	You (<i>Ud.</i>) have to _____ He/she has to _____
tenemos que _____	We have to _____
tienen que _____	They have to _____ You all have to _____



all forms drill



Cover the verb form and conjugate in Spanish according to the pronoun.
Then cover the Spanish columns and translate from English to Spanish.
Check your answers as you go.

NECESITAR			PODER		
QUERER			GUSTAR		
IR			TENER QUE		
Yo	necesito	I need	Yo	puedo	I can
Tú	necesitas	You need (<i>tú</i>)	Tú	puedes	You can (<i>tú</i>)
Él	necesita	He needs	Él	puede	He can
Ella	necesita	She needs	Ella	puede	She can
Ud.	necesita	You need (<i>Ud.</i>)	Ud.	puede	You can (<i>Ud.</i>)
Nosotros	necesitamos	We need	Nosotros	podemos	We can
Ellos	necesitan	They need (<i>m</i>)	Ellos	pueden	They can (<i>m</i>)
Ellas	necesitan	They need (<i>f</i>)	Ellas	pueden	They can (<i>f</i>)
Uds.	necesitan	You all need	Uds.	pueden	You all can
Yo	quiero	I want	A mí	me gusta	I like
Tú	quieres	You want (<i>tú</i>)	A ti	te gusta	You like (<i>tú</i>)
Él	quiere	He wants	A él	le gusta	He likes
Ella	quiere	She wants	A ella	le gusta	She likes
Ud.	quiere	You want (<i>Ud.</i>)	A Ud.	le gusta	You like (<i>Ud.</i>)
Nosotros	queremos	We want	A nosotros	nos gusta	We like
Ellos	quieren	They want (<i>m</i>)	A ellos	les gusta	They like (<i>m</i>)
Ellas	quieren	They want (<i>f</i>)	A ellas	les gusta	They like (<i>f</i>)
Uds.	quieren	You all want	A Uds.	les gusta	You all like
Yo	voy	I'm going	Yo	tengo que	I have to
Tú	vas	You're going (<i>tú</i>)	Tú	tienes que	You have to (<i>tú</i>)
Él	va	He's going	Él	tiene que	He has to
Ella	va	She's going	Ella	tiene que	She has to
Ud.	va	You're going (<i>Ud.</i>)	Ud.	tiene que	You have to (<i>Ud.</i>)
Nosotros	vamos	We're going	Nosotros	tenemos que	We have to
Ellos	van	They're going (<i>m</i>)	Ellos	tienen que	They have to (<i>m</i>)
Ellas	van	They're going (<i>f</i>)	Ellas	tienen que	They have to (<i>f</i>)
Uds.	van	You all are going	Uds.	tienen que	You all have to

all forms, written & spoken exercise

Cover the right-hand column (answers) and fill in the blank with the proper verb form. Answers in far right column.

1. poder (yo) _____
2. necesitar (tú) _____
3. ira (nosotros) _____
4. tenerque (él) _____
5. querer (ellos) _____
6. gustar (a Ud.) _____
7. tenerque (Uds.) _____
8. poder (él y yo) _____
9. ira (María) _____
10. querer (José) _____
11. tenerque (mis hijos) _____
12. ira (tus amigos) _____
13. poder (ella) _____
14. necesitar (Ud.) _____
15. tenerque (ellas) _____
16. querer (los niños) _____
17. ira (ellos) _____
18. gustar (atú) _____
19. necesitar (yo) _____
20. tenerque ... (María y tú) _____
21. ira (tú) _____
22. poder (Uds.) _____
23. necesitar (nosotros) _____
24. querer (tú) _____
25. tenerque (José y yo) _____
26. gustar (a Uds.) _____
27. querer (María y tú) _____
28. ira (José y María) _____
29. tenerque (yo) _____
30. necesitar (ellos) _____
31. gustar (a mi madre) _____
32. ira (tu hermana) _____
33. poder (Uds.) _____
34. tenerque (Ud.) _____
35. querer (nosotros) _____
36. necesitar (tú) _____
37. poder (tus amigos) _____
38. querer (yo) _____



SPOKEN EXERCISE: Cover the English column and translate the Spanish. Then cover the Spanish column and translate the English. Check your answers as you go.

- I can puedo
- You (tú) need necesitas
- We are going to vamos a
- He has to él tiene que
- They (m) want ellos quieren
- You (Ud.) like a Ud. le gusta
- You all have to Uds. tienen que
- He and I can podemos
- Maria is going to María va a
- Jose wants José quiere
- My sons have to mis hijos tienen que
- Your friends are going to tus amigos van a
- She can ella puede
- You (Ud.) need Ud. necesita
- They (f) have to ellas tienen que
- The children want los niños quieren
- They (m) are going to ellos van a
- You (tú) like te gusta
- I need necesito
- Maria and you (tú) have to María y tú tienen que
- You (tú) are going to vas a
- You all can Uds. pueden
- We need necesitamos
- You (tú) wantquieres
- Jose and I have to tenemos que
- You all like a Uds. les gusta
- Maria and you (tú) want quieren
- Jose and Maria are going to ... José y María van a
- I have to tengo que
- They (m) need ellos necesitan
- My mother likes a mi madre le gusta
- Your (tú) sister is going to tu hermana va a
- You all can Uds. pueden
- You (Ud.) have to Ud. tiene que
- We want queremos
- You (tú) need necesitas
- Your (tú) friends can tus amigos pueden
- I want quiero

136 Power verbs conjugation quiz



50 possible
- _____ wrong
_____ total score

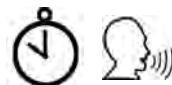
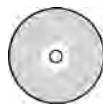
If you got 40 correct, congratulations!
Retest yourself on the items you missed.



answers on next page

Use subject clarifiers (*el, ella, Ud., ellos, ellas, Uds.*) when necessary.

1. I need _____
2. You (*Ud.*) need _____
3. I want _____
4. You (*Ud.*) want _____
5. I'm going to _____
6. You're (*Ud.*) going to _____
7. I can _____
8. You (*Ud.*) can _____
9. I have to _____
10. You (*Ud.*) have to _____
11. I like _____
12. You (*Ud.*) like _____
13. We want _____
14. They (*m*) need _____
15. He's going to _____
16. She has to _____
17. I want _____
18. We like _____
19. You (*tú*) need _____
20. I have to _____
21. You're (*tú*) going to _____
22. She can _____
23. We need _____
24. You all are going to _____
25. You (*tú*) like _____
26. She needs _____
27. You all want _____
28. They (*f*) have to _____
29. You (*Ud.*) can _____
30. They (*m*) need _____
31. I need _____
32. He wants _____
33. He likes _____
34. We can _____
35. He has to _____
36. You all want _____
37. They're (*f*) going to _____
38. You all can _____
39. You're (*tú*) going to _____
40. You (*tú*) like _____
41. I need _____
42. You (*Ud.*) have to _____
43. He needs _____
44. We're going to _____
45. He likes _____
46. I have to _____
47. She's going to _____
48. You (*tú*) want _____
49. They (*f*) can _____
50. You (*Ud.*) like _____

**Q**

This is a timed exercise. Set your clock for three minutes.
Translate from English to Spanish.

1. I need	Necesito	26. She needs	Ella Necesita
2. You (<i>Ud.</i>) need	Ud. Necesita	27. You all want	Uds. Quieren
3. I want	Quiero	28. They (<i>f</i>) have to	Ellas Tienen que
4. You (<i>Ud.</i>) want	Ud. Quiere	29. You (<i>Ud.</i>) can	Ud. Puede
5. I'm going to	Voy a	30. They (<i>m</i>) need	Ellos Necesitan
6. You're (<i>Ud.</i>) going to	Ud. Va a	31. I need	Necesito
7. I can	Puedo	32. He wants	Él Quiere
8. You (<i>Ud.</i>) can	Ud. Puede	33. He likes	A él Le gusta
9. I have to	Tengo que	34. We can	Podemos
10. You (<i>Ud.</i>) have to	Ud. Tiene que	35. He has to	Él Tiene que
11. I like	Me gusta	36. You all want	Uds. Quieren
12. You (<i>Ud.</i>) like	A Ud. Le gusta	37. They're (<i>f</i>) going to	Ellas Van a
13. We want	Queremos	38. You all can	Uds. Pueden
14. They (<i>m</i>) need	Ellos Necesitan	39. You're (<i>tú</i>) going to	Vas a
15. He's going to	Él Va a	40. You (<i>tú</i>) like	Te gusta
16. She has to	Ella Tiene que	41. I need	Necesito
17. I want	Quiero	42. You (<i>Ud.</i>) have to	Ud. Tiene que
18. We like	Nos gusta	43. He needs	Él Necesita
19. You (<i>tú</i>) need	Necesitas	44. We're going to	Vamos a
20. I have to	Tengo que	45. He likes	A él Le gusta
21. You're (<i>tú</i>) going to	Vas a	46. I have to	Tengo que
22. She can	Ella Puede	47. She's going to	Ella Va a
23. We need	Necesitamos	48. You (<i>tú</i>) want	Quieres
24. You all are going to	Uds. Van a	49. They (<i>f</i>) can	Ellas Pueden
25. You (<i>tú</i>) like	Te gusta	50. You (<i>Ud.</i>) like	A Ud. Le gusta



answers on page 140



100 possible

- _____ wrong

_____ total score

If you got 80 correct, congratulations!
Retest yourself on the items you missed.

1. to believe _____
2. to fill _____
3. to try (to) _____
4. to cook _____
5. to be (feelings - location) _____
6. to live _____
7. to fall down _____
8. to carry, wear _____
9. to wait (for), hope, expect _____
10. to clean _____
11. to read _____
12. to dance _____
13. to mail, send _____
14. to move (household) _____
15. to decide _____
16. to sign _____
17. to understand _____
18. to drive, manage _____
19. to eat _____
20. to need _____
21. to order _____
22. to visit _____
23. to go _____
24. to pay _____
25. to wash _____
26. to get sick _____
27. to use _____
28. to move (something) _____
29. to follow _____
30. to pass (by), happen, spend (time) _____
31. to fix, arrange _____
32. to come _____
33. to think (about) _____
34. to know (person or place) _____
35. to walk _____
36. to bathe oneself _____
37. to open _____
38. to chat _____
39. to be (permanent) _____
40. to invite _____
41. to start, begin _____
42. to hear _____
43. to play (an instrument), touch _____
44. to get up _____
45. to ask, question _____
46. to close _____
47. to bring _____
48. to spend, waste _____
49. to prepare _____
50. to have fun _____

51. to leave behind, (w/ de) =quit _____
52. to ask for _____
53. to introduce _____
54. to leave, go out _____
55. to buy _____
56. to study _____
57. to learn _____
58. to test, taste _____
59. to speak _____
60. to go up, get into (a vehicle) _____
61. to sit down _____
62. to find, encounter _____
63. to play (a sport or game) _____
64. to lose _____
65. to write _____
66. to remove _____
67. to help _____
68. to sell _____
69. to sing _____
70. to wash oneself _____
71. to put _____
72. to get, obtain _____
73. to rest _____
74. to look for _____
75. to sleep _____
76. to recommend _____
77. to arrive _____
78. to lie down, go to bed _____
79. to remember _____
80. to receive _____
81. to lower, get out (of a vehicle) _____
82. to return _____
83. to see, watch _____
84. to take out, take (a photo) _____
85. to worry _____
86. to answer _____
87. to finish, terminate _____
88. to earn, win _____
89. to run, flow _____
90. to drink, take (mode of transport) _____
91. to give _____
92. to remain, stay _____
93. to work _____
94. to change, exchange _____
95. to say, tell _____
96. to travel _____
97. to know (information) _____
98. to forget _____
99. to do, make _____
100. to listen to _____

140 Common verbs quiz answers

**A**

Test yourself out loud or on a separate sheet of paper by covering first the English column and translating from Spanish to English. Then cover the Spanish column and translate from English to Spanish.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>creer</i> | to believe | 51. <i>dejar(de)</i> | to leave behind, (w/ de) =quit |
| 2. <i>llenar</i> | to fill | 52. <i>pedir</i> | to ask for |
| 3. <i>tratar(de)</i> | to try (to) | 53. <i>presentar</i> | to introduce |
| 4. <i>cocinar</i> | to cook | 54. <i>salir</i> | to leave, go out |
| 5. <i>estar</i> | to be (feelings - location) | 55. <i>comprar</i> | to buy |
| 6. <i>vivir</i> | to live | 56. <i>estudiar</i> | to study |
| 7. <i>caerse</i> | to fall down | 57. <i>aprender</i> | to learn |
| 8. <i>llevar</i> | to carry, wear | 58. <i>probar</i> | to test, taste |
| 9. <i>esperar</i> | to wait (for), hope, expect | 59. <i>hablar</i> | to speak |
| 10. <i>limpiar</i> | to clean | 60. <i>subir</i> | to go up, get into (a vehicle) |
| 11. <i>leer</i> | to read | 61. <i>sentarse</i> | to sit down |
| 12. <i>bailar</i> | to dance | 62. <i>encontrar</i> | to find, encounter |
| 13. <i>mandar</i> | to mail, send | 63. <i>jugar</i> | to play (a sport or game) |
| 14. <i>mudarse</i> | to move (household) | 64. <i>perder</i> | to lose |
| 15. <i>decidir</i> | to decide | 65. <i>escribir</i> | to write |
| 16. <i>firmar</i> | to sign | 66. <i>quitar</i> | to remove |
| 17. <i>entender</i> | to understand | 67. <i>ayudar</i> | to help |
| 18. <i>manejar</i> | to drive, manage | 68. <i>vender</i> | to sell |
| 19. <i>comer</i> | to eat | 69. <i>cantar</i> | to sing |
| 20. <i>necesitar</i> | to need | 70. <i>lavarse</i> | to wash oneself |
| 21. <i>ordenar</i> | to order | 71. <i>poner</i> | to put |
| 22. <i>visitar</i> | to visit | 72. <i>conseguir</i> | to get, obtain |
| 23. <i>ir</i> | to go | 73. <i>descansar</i> | to rest |
| 24. <i>pagar</i> | to pay | 74. <i>buscar</i> | to look for |
| 25. <i>lavar</i> | to wash | 75. <i>dormir</i> | to sleep |
| 26. <i>enfermarse</i> | to get sick | 76. <i>recomendar</i> | to recommend |
| 27. <i>usar</i> | to use | 77. <i>llegar</i> | to arrive |
| 28. <i>move(r)</i> | to move (something) | 78. <i>acostarse</i> | to lie down, go to bed |
| 29. <i>seguir</i> | to follow | 79. <i>recordar</i> | to remember |
| 30. <i>pasar(por)</i> | to pass (by), happen, spend (time) | 80. <i>recibir</i> | to receive |
| 31. <i>arreglar</i> | to fix, arrange | 81. <i>bajar</i> | to lower, get out (of a vehicle) |
| 32. <i>venir</i> | to come | 82. <i>regresar</i> | to return |
| 33. <i>pensar(en)</i> | to think (about) | 83. <i>ver</i> | to see, watch |
| 34. <i>conocer</i> | to know, meet (person or place) | 84. <i>sacar</i> | to take out, take (a photo) |
| 35. <i>caminar</i> | to walk | 85. <i>preocuparse</i> | to worry |
| 36. <i>bañarse</i> | to bathe oneself | 86. <i>contestar</i> | to answer |
| 37. <i>abrir</i> | to open | 87. <i>terminar</i> | to finish, terminate |
| 38. <i>platicar</i> | to chat | 88. <i>ganar</i> | to earn, win |
| 39. <i>ser</i> | to be (permanent) | 89. <i>correr</i> | to run, flow |
| 40. <i>invitar</i> | to invite | 90. <i>tomar</i> | to drink, take (mode of transport) |
| 41. <i>empezar</i> | to start, begin | 91. <i>dar</i> | to give |
| 42. <i>oír</i> | to hear | 92. <i>quedarse</i> | to remain, stay |
| 43. <i>tocar</i> | to play (an instrument), touch | 93. <i>trabajar</i> | to work |
| 44. <i>levantarse</i> | to get up | 94. <i>cambiar</i> | to change, exchange |
| 45. <i>preguntar</i> | to ask, question | 95. <i>decir</i> | to say, tell |
| 46. <i>cerrar</i> | to close | 96. <i>viajar</i> | to travel |
| 47. <i>traer</i> | to bring | 97. <i>saber</i> | to know (information) |
| 48. <i>gastar</i> | to spend, waste | 98. <i>olvidar</i> | to forget |
| 49. <i>preparar</i> | to prepare | 99. <i>hacer</i> | to do, make |
| 50. <i>divertirse</i> | to have fun | 100. <i>escuchar</i> | to listen to |



48 possible
 - _____ wrong
 _____ total score

If you got 39 correct, congratulations!
 Retest yourself on the items you missed.



answers on page 143

1. yesterday _____ 27. already, this instant _____
 2. today _____ 28. now, right away _____
 3. tomorrow _____ 29. as soon as possible _____
 4. day after tomorrow _____ 30. soon _____
5. this morning _____ 31. breakfast _____
 6. this afternoon _____ 32. lunch _____
 7. this evening _____ 33. dinner _____
 8. this week _____
 9. this month _____
 10. this year _____
 11. this Monday _____
 12. this summer _____
 13. this weekend _____
 14. for an hour _____ 39. tomorrow (in the) morning _____
 15. each day _____
 16. each morning _____ 40. tomorrow (in the) afternoon _____
 17. each afternoon _____
 18. each night _____ 41. tomorrow (in the) night _____
 19. each week _____
 20. early _____ 42. never _____
 21. on time _____ 43. once - sometimes _____
 22. late _____ 44. frequently _____
 23. later _____ 45. always _____
 24. before _____ 46. not yet _____
 25. during _____ 47. still _____
 26. after _____ 48. then _____

142 Glue words quiz



48 possible

- _____ wrong

_____ total score

If you got 39 correct, congratulations!
Retest yourself on the items you missed.



answers on page 143

1. what _____
2. when _____
3. where _____
4. (to) where _____
5. how _____
6. who _____
7. (to) whom _____
8. why _____
9. how much _____
10. which _____
11. and _____
12. or _____
13. but _____
14. because _____
15. if _____
16. to _____
17. with _____
18. without _____
19. of, from, about _____
20. in, on, at _____
21. on, about _____
22. for (in exchange), by, through _____
23. for (intended), in order to _____
24. with me _____
25. with you (*formal, personal*) _____
26. with him, with her _____
27. with us _____
28. with them (*m, f*) _____
29. with you all _____
30. a little (of) _____
31. enough _____
32. too much _____
33. this (*m, f*) _____
34. these (*m, f*) _____
35. that (*m, f*) _____
36. those (*m, f*) _____
37. here _____
38. there _____
39. more _____
40. less _____
41. all (*m, f*) _____
42. nothing _____
43. no one _____
44. almost _____
45. my _____
46. your (*personal*) _____
47. your (*formal*), his, her, their _____
48. our _____



A

Test yourself out loud or on a separate sheet of paper by covering first the English column and translating from Spanish to English. Then cover the Spanish column and translate from English to Spanish.

1. ayer	yesterday	1. qué.....	what
2. hoy.....	today	2. cuándo	when
3. mañana	tomorrow	3. dónde	where
4. pasado mañana	day after tomorrow	4. adónde	(to) where
5. esta mañana	this morning	5. cómo	how
6. esta tarde	this afternoon	6. quién	who
7. esta noche	this evening	7. a quién	(to) whom
8. esta semana	this week	8. por qué	why
9. este mes	this month	9. cuánto	how much
10. este año	this year	10. cuál	which
11. este lunes	this Monday	11. y	and
12. este verano.....	this summer	12. o	or
13. este fin de semana.....	this weekend	13. pero	but
14. por una hora	for an hour	14. porque	because
15. cada día	each day	15. si	if
16. cada mañana	each morning	16. a	to
17. cada tarde	each afternoon	17. con	with
18. cada noche.....	each night	18. sin	without
19. cada semana	each week	19. de	of, from, about
20. temprano	early	20. en	in, on, at
21. a tiempo	on time	21. sobre	on, about
22. tarde	late	22. por	for (in exchange), by, through
23. más tarde	later	23. para	for (intended), in order to
24. antes (de)	before	24. conmigo	with me
25. durante	during	25. con usted, contigo	with you (<i>formal, personal</i>)
26. después (de)	after	26. con él, con ella	with him, with her
27. ya	already, this instant	27. con nosotros	with us
28. ahora, ahorita	now, right away	28. con ellos, con ellas	with them (<i>m, f</i>)
29. cuanto antes	as soon as possible	29. con Uds.	with you all
30. pronto	soon	30. un poco (de)	a little (of)
31. el desayuno	breakfast	31. suficiente	enough
32. la comida	lunch	32. demasiado	too much
33. la cena	dinner	33. este, esta	this (<i>m, f</i>)
34. la próxima semana.....	next week	34. estos, estas	these (<i>m, f</i>)
35. el próximo mes.....	next month	35. ese, esa	that (<i>m, f</i>)
36. el próximo año	next year	36. esos, esas	those (<i>m, f</i>)
37. el próximo lunes	next Monday	37. aquí	here
38. el próximo verano	next summer	38. allí.....	there
39. mañana en la mañana	tomorrow morning	39. más	more
40. mañana en la tarde	tomorrow afternoon	40. menos	less
41. mañana en la noche	tomorrow night	41. todo/-a	all (<i>m, f</i>)
42. nunca	never	42. nada	nothing
43. una vez - a veces	once - sometimes	43. nadie	no one
44. frecuentemente	frequently	44. casi	almost
45. siempre	always	45. mi(-s)	my
46. no todavía	not yet	46. tu(-s)	your (<i>personal</i>)
47. todavía	still	47. su(-s)	your (<i>formal</i>), his, her, their
48. entonces	then	48. nuestro/a (-s)	our

Final exam

476 points possible



Before doing this exam look over the point system on page 148 to see how you will be scored. Also refer to page 152 for grading instructions.



E&S answers on page 148

Note: You must put the following subject pronouns - *Ud., él, ella, Uds., ellos, ellas* - after the verb in the question or you will lose a point.

1. What day is today? *¿Qué día es hoy?*

Today is Tuesday. *Hoy es martes.*

2. What does your (*tú*) friend (*m*) like to drink?

He likes to drink red wine.

3. How old are you (*tú*)?

I'm forty years old.

4. How are you (*tú*)?

I'm well, thank you.

5. What do you (*tú*) need to buy?

I need to buy a gift for my friend.

6. Why do you (*Ud.*) need to learn Spanish?

Because I need to be able to understand my friends.

7. Can you all see?

No, we can't see anything.

8. What do you (*Ud.*) like to cook?

I like to cook Chinese food.

9. When do you (*Ud.*) have to be there?

I have to be there tomorrow.

10. What do you all want to eat?

We want to eat Mexican food.

11. Are there messages?

Yes, there are three.

12. When are you (*Ud.*) going to do it (*m*)?

I'm going to do it (*m*) tonight.

13. Are you (*tú*) going to leave your bag here?

No, I'm not going to leave it here.

14. Are you (*Ud.*) going to invite José to the party?

Yes, I'm going to invite him to the party.

15. Are you all going to order drinks now?

Yes, we're going to order before eating.



answers on page 149

16. Can you (*Ud.*) hear the doorbell? _____

No, I can't hear it (*m.*) _____

17. When can they (*m*) pay us? _____

They can pay us on Sunday. _____

18. What do you (*Ud.*) need to bring for the party? _____

I need to bring a bottle of wine. _____

19. Can you (*Ud.*) wait here, please? _____

I can wait for five minutes. _____

20. At what time can they (*m*) come? _____

They can come at three o'clock. _____

21. For how long are you (*tú*) leaving? _____

I'm leaving for two hours. _____

22. To where are you (*Ud.*) going to travel? _____

I'm going to travel to Mexico. _____

23. What does your (*tú*) wife like to watch on TV? _____

She likes to watch soap operas. _____

24. Is the market open? _____

No, it is closed. _____

25. Do you (*tú*) have to ask for permission? _____

Yes, I have to ask for it. _____

26. Can you (*Ud.*) go with me tomorrow morning? _____

Yes, I can go with you. _____

27. Do you (*Ud.*) want to leave a message? _____

Yes, I want to leave a message for Juan. _____

28. Are you (*Ud.*) hungry? _____

Yes, I'm hungry. _____

29. When do you all need to know? _____

We need to know before tomorrow. _____

30. For how long do you (*tú*) have to work? _____

I have to work for two weeks more. _____



answers on page 150

31. Are you all going to work tomorrow? _____
No, we're not going to work tomorrow. _____

32. Is there a reservation for Mr. Smith? _____
Yes, there is one. _____

33. Can you (*tú*) pass by my house tonight? _____
Yes, I can pass by after eight o'clock. _____

34. When can you (*Ud.*) do it (*m*)? _____
I can do it (*m*) later. _____

35. Do you (*Ud.*) have change? _____
No, I don't have change. _____

36. How are you (*Ud.*) going to travel? _____
I'm going to travel by train. _____

37. What time are you (*Ud.*) going to finish? _____
I'm going to finish today at 3:00. _____

38. When do we have to start? _____
We have to start now in order to finish on time. _____

39. When do you (*Ud.*) need to return? _____
I need to return tomorrow. _____

40. Does Lupita have to wash the dishes? _____
Yes, she has to wash them. _____

41. Do you (*tú*) want to be my friend (*f*)? _____
Yes, I want to be your friend. _____

42. Do you (*Ud.*) need to pay the bill? _____
Yes, I need to pay it. _____

43. Do you (*tú*) want to take an aspirin? _____
Yes, I want to take one please. _____

44. What do you (*Ud.*) want to drink? _____
I want to drink purified water. _____

45. Do you (*Ud.*) want to go to the party with me? _____
Yes, I want to go with you. _____



answers on page 151

46. Who is your (*Ud.*) doctor? _____

(El) Dr. Lopez is my doctor. _____

47. Are you (*tú*) going to change pesos for dollars? _____

No, I'm going to change dollars for pesos. _____

48. What do you (*Ud.*) like to eat in the morning? _____

I like to eat fruit and toast. _____

49. When do you (*Ud.*) like to read? _____

I like to read before sleeping. _____

50. Do you (*Ud.*) want to buy a gift? _____

Yes, I want to buy one. _____

51. What time do you (*Ud.*) have to leave? _____

I have to leave at 11 o'clock. _____

52. Do you (*Ud.*) need to use the bathroom? _____

No, I don't need to use it. _____

53. Where do you all want to go? _____

We want to go to the beach. _____

54. Can you all decide today? _____

Yes, we can decide later. _____

55. Can you (*Ud.*) use a computer? _____

Yes, I can use one. _____

56. Do you (*Ud.*) like to play tennis? _____

Yes, I like to play tennis. _____

57. Do you (*Ud.*) need to think about it (*m*) a little more? _____

Yes, I need to think about it a little more. _____

58. Can you (*Ud.*) help me, please? _____

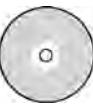
Yes, I can help you (*f*). _____

59. When is she going to fix it (*m*)? _____

She's going to fix it in an hour. _____

60. When can you get tickets for the movie? _____

I can get them on Sunday. _____

**A**

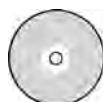
for page 144

grading scale on page 152

possible
points

score

1. ¿Qué <u>día</u> es hoy?	<u>Hoy</u> es martes.	4	_____
2. ¿Qué <u>le</u> gusta <u>tomar</u> a tu <u>amigo</u> ?	<u>Le</u> gusta <u>tomar</u> vino tinto.	5	_____
3. ¿Cuántos <u>años</u> <u>tienes</u> ?	<u>Tengo</u> cuarenta años.	3	_____
4. ¿Cómo <u>estás</u> ?	<u>Estoy</u> bien, gracias.	2	_____
5. ¿Qué <u>necesitas</u> <u>comprar</u> ?	<u>Necesito</u> comprar un regalo para mi amigo.	3	_____
6. ¿Por qué <u>necesita</u> aprender Ud. <u>español</u> ?	<u>Porque</u> necesito poder entender a mis amigos.	6	_____
7. ¿Pueden ver Uds.?	No, <u>no podemos</u> ver nada.	3	_____
8. ¿Qué <u>le</u> gusta <u>cocinar</u> a Ud.?	<u>Me</u> gusta <u>cocinar</u> comida china.	4	_____
9. ¿Cuándo <u>tiene que</u> <u>estar</u> Ud. allí?	<u>Tengo que</u> estar allí mañana.	5	_____
10. ¿Qué <u>quieren</u> comer Uds.?	<u>Queremos</u> comer comida mexicana.	4	_____
11. ¿Hay <u>recados</u> ?	Sí, <u>hay</u> tres.	2	_____
12. ¿Cuándo va a hacerlo Ud.? [-lo counts for one point]	<u>Voy</u> a hacerlo <u>esta noche</u> . [-lo counts for one point]	5	_____
13. ¿Vas a dejar tu <u>bolsa</u> aquí?	No, <u>no voy</u> a dejarla aquí. [-la counts for one point]	4	_____
14. ¿Va a invitar Ud. a José a la fiesta?	Sí, <u>voy</u> a <u>invitarlo</u> . [-lo counts for one point]	6	_____
15. ¿Van a ordenar Uds. <u>bebidas</u> ahora?	Sí, <u>vamos</u> a <u>ordenar</u> antes de <u>comer</u> .	3	_____

**A**

for page 145

grading scale on page 152

possible
points

score

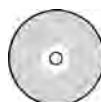
16. ¿Puede oír Ud. el timbre?	4	
No, no puedo oírlo. [-lo counts for one point]	3	
17. ¿Cuándo pueden pagarnos ellos? [-nos counts for one point]	5	
Pueden pagarnos el domingo. [-nos counts for one point]	4	
18. ¿Qué necesita traer Ud. para la fiesta?	6	
Necesito traer una botella de vino.	5	
19. ¿Puede esperar Ud. aquí, por favor?	5	
Sí, puedo esperar cinco minutos.	4	
20. ¿A qué hora pueden venir ellos?	4	
Pueden venir a las tres.	3	
21. ¿Por cuánto tiempo vas a salir?	4	
Voy a salir por dos horas.	5	
22. ¿Adónde va a viajar Ud.?	4	
Voy a viajar a México.	4	
23. ¿Qué le gusta ver a tu esposa en la tele?	7	
Le gusta ver las telenovelas.	3	
24. ¿Está abierto el mercado?	3	
No, está cerrado.	2	
25. ¿Tienes que pedir permiso?	3	
Sí, tengo que pedirlo. [-lo counts for one point]	3	
26. ¿Puede ir Ud. conmigo mañana en la mañana?	5	
Sí, puedo ir con Ud.	3	
27. ¿Quiere dejar Ud. un mensaje?	4	
Sí, quiero dejar un mensaje para Juan.	4	
28. ¿Tiene hambre Ud.?	3	
Sí, tengo hambre.	2	
29. ¿Cuándo necesitan saber Uds.?	4	
Necesitamos saber antes de mañana.	4	
30. ¿Por cuánto tiempo tienes que trabajar?	4	
Tengo que trabajar por dos semanas más.	6	

**A**

for page 146

grading scale on page 152

	<i>possible points</i>	<i>score</i>
31. <u>¿Van a trabajar Uds. mañana?</u> No, <u>no vamos a trabajar mañana.</u>	4	
	3	
32. <u>¿Hay una reservación para el Señor Smith?</u> Sí, <u>hay una.</u>	4	
	2	
33. <u>¿Puedes pasar por mi casa esta noche?</u> Sí, <u>puedo pasar después de las ocho.</u>	6	
	4	
34. <u>¿Cuándo puede hacerlo Ud.?</u> [-lo counts for one point] <u>Puedo hacerlo más tarde.</u> [-lo counts for one point]	5	
	4	
35. <u>¿Tiene cambio Ud.?</u> No, <u>no tengo cambio.</u>	3	
	2	
36. <u>¿Cómo va a viajar Ud.?</u> <u>Voy a viajar por tren.</u>	4	
	4	
37. <u>¿A qué hora va a terminar Ud.?</u> <u>Voy a terminar hoy a las tres.</u>	4	
	4	
38. <u>¿Cuándo tenemos que empezar?</u> <u>Tenemos que empezar ahora para terminar a tiempo.</u>	3	
	6	
39. <u>¿Cuándo necesita regresar Ud.?</u> <u>Necesito regresar mañana.</u>	4	
	3	
40. <u>¿Tiene que lavar Lupita los trastes?</u> Sí, <u>tiene que lavarlos.</u> [-los counts for one point]	4	
	3	
41. <u>¿Quieres ser mi amiga?</u> Sí, <u>quiero ser tu amiga.</u>	4	
	4	
42. <u>¿Necesita pagar Ud. la cuenta?</u> Sí, <u>necesito pagarla.</u> [-la counts for one point]	4	
	3	
43. <u>¿Quieres tomar una aspirina?</u> Sí, <u>quiero tomar una, por favor.</u>	3	
	4	
44. <u>¿Qué quiere tomar Ud.?</u> <u>Quiero tomar agua purificada.</u>	4	
	4	
45. <u>¿Quiere ir Ud. a la fiesta conmigo?</u> Sí, <u>quiero ir con Ud.</u>	6	
	3	

**A**

for page 147

grading scale on page 152

possible
points

score

46. ¿Quién es su doctor?

El Dr. López es mi doctor.

4

47. ¿Vas a cambiar pesos por dólares?

No, voy a cambiar dólares por pesos.

5

48. ¿Qué le gusta comer a Ud. en la mañana?

Me gusta comer fruta y pan tostado.

6

49. ¿Cuándo le gusta leer a Ud.?

Me gusta leer antes de dormir.

4

50. ¿Quiere comprar Ud. un regalo?

Sí, quiero comprar uno.

4

51. ¿A qué hora tiene que salir Ud.?

Tengo que salir a las once.

3

52. ¿Necesita usar Ud. el baño?

No, no necesito usarlo. [-lo counts for one point]

4

53. ¿Adónde quieren ir Uds.?

Queremos ir a la playa.

3

54. ¿Pueden decidir Uds. hoy?

Sí, podemos decidir más tarde.

4

55. ¿Puede usar Ud. una computadora?

Sí, puedo usar una.

3

56. ¿Le gusta jugar a Ud. tenis?

Sí, me gusta jugar tenis.

4

57. ¿Necesita pensarlo Ud. un poco más? [-lo counts for one point]

Sí, necesito pensarlo un poco más. [-lo counts for one point]

3

58. ¿Puede ayudarme Ud.? [-me counts for one point]

Sí, puedo ayudarla. [-la counts for one point]

4

59. ¿Cuándo va a arreglarlo ella? [-lo counts for one point]

Va a arreglarlo en una hora. [-lo counts for one point]

5

60. ¿Cuándo puede conseguir Ud. los boletos?

Puedo conseguirlos el domingo. [-los counts for one point]

4

152 Final exam - grading

Each sentence in the Final Exam has two to six components, each with 1 point value:

1. The power verb (or *hay, ser* or *estar*)
2. The infinitive
3. The direct object
4. Glue words and/or time frame phrases
5. Subject or direct object pronouns
6. *Por* or *para*

Add up the total number of points on each page to get your final score.

Total possible points: 476

Your score: _____

A = 90% or higher - 428
B = 80% or higher - 380
C = 70% or higher - 332
D = 60% or higher - 285
F = less than 60% (less than 285)

If you scored 70% or above (332 or above), congratulations! You are ready for the Level 2.

If you scored 70% or below (332 or below), review the questions that you missed and re-test yourself by using the sections of the workbook that deal with those questions. Then go to Level 2



Estimado estudiante de español,

¡Felicidades! Congratulations on completing the first level of your Foundation course. You have learned how to express your needs in Spanish.

To continue your progress

1. Engage in conversation with other Spanish speakers as often as possible.
2. Get Foundation Course Level 2 and get started.
3. Practice with the CDs or cassettes at home and in your car.
4. Continue to use your GameCards with other students or native Spanish speakers.

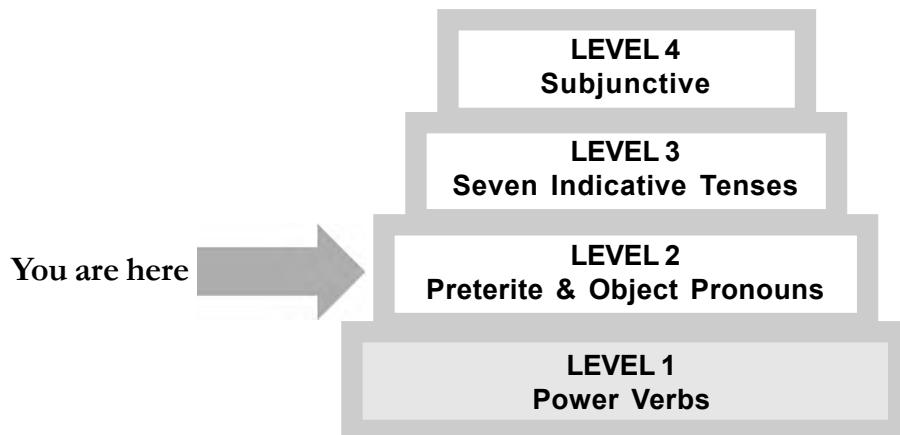
Once you finish all four levels of this course, you will know all the tenses and be able to transfer your thoughts into Spanish. With practice you will begin to transfer your personality into Spanish.

If you work on your Spanish a little every day, you will be amazed at how fast you learn. Go to our website for free learning and our online learning game.

Ahora puedo hablar en español contigo. ¡Esto es excelente! Eres parte de una comunidad de estudiantes que usan este sistema. Hay muchos, y puedes comunicarte con ellos por medio del “Forum” en www.warrenhardy.com.

Hasta el segundo nivel,

Warren



154 Recommended supplementary study materials

1. Carolina Dialogues

Warren Hardy Spanish Level 1 reader

Written in present tense, this lovely story of Carolina and new her friends will intrigue you and enrich your vocabulary. The first in a series of Warren Hardy Pocketbook Readers.

2. The Soap Opera of Carolina

Warren Hardy Spanish Level 2 reader

by Lilia Trápaga, Fernando Maqueo, and Warren Hardy

This is a fun Soap Opera that takes place in Mexico City and San Miguel de Allende, Mexico. It contains fascinating cultural and historical information. It is written mainly in the preterite tense with English translations and study components. This book is great for vocabulary enrichment.

3. 501 Spanish Verbs

by Dr. Christopher Kendris

Publisher: Barrons

For verb conjugations and usage.

4. Spanish Grammar

by Dr. Christopher Kendris

Publisher: Barrons

This is a handy and concise grammar guide.

5. You need two dictionaries, a pocket and home reference:

Langescheidt's Universal Dictionary

This is a small pocket dictionary with the yellow plastic cover.

The New World Dictionary

This is a larger dictionary with idiomatic usages and country references.

6. Mexican Etiquette and Ethics

by Boye Lafayette De Mente

Publisher: Phoenix Books

For social protocol and cultural understanding, this is a must-read.

This is a provocative analysis of the values and morals that shape the psyche and personality of Mexicans.

7. Useful websites

www.warrenhardy.com

www.elearnspanishlanguage.com

Section IX

DIALOGS

¿Cómo se llama, de dónde es y qué le gusta hacer?

Buenas tardes. ¿Cómo se llama Ud.?

Buenos tardes. Me llamo Juan.

¿Y Ud.?

Me llamo Ricardo. Mucho gusto.

¿De dónde es Ud.?

Soy de _____. ¿y Ud.?

Soy de San Miguel de Allende.

¿Qué le gusta hacer?

Me gusta bailar salsa, ver películas y leer.

¿y que le gusta?

Me gusta estudiar español y la cultura Mexicana. Me gusta mucho México.

Que bueno. ¿Puedo invitarte a una copa?

¿Por que no? gracias.

What's your name, where are you from and what do you like to do?

Good evening. What's your name?

**Good evening. My name is Juan.
And you?**

My name is Ricardo. Much pleasure.

Where are you from?

I am from _____. And you?

I am from San Miguel de Allende.

What do you like to do?

I like to dance salsa, watch movies and read. And what do you like to do?

I like to study Spanish and learn about the Mexican culture. I like Mexico a lot.

Great. Can I invite you to a drink?

Why not? Thanks.

¿Dónde vive y quiere comer conmigo?

¿Dónde vive Ud.?

Vivo en el la colonia Santa Julia. ¿Y Ud.?

Vivo en el centro en un departamento.

¿Quiere comer conmigo?

Sí, ¿Dónde le gusta comer?

Me gusta comer en casa pero hay un restaurante chico y bueno aquí a la vuelta. Vamos allí.

Excelente. Tengo hambre.

¿Qué le gusta comer?

Me gusta todo. La comida Mexicana es muy deliciosa.

¿Le gusta comida picante?

No mucho. ¿y a Ud.?

Por supuesto. Soy Mexicano.

Where do you live and would like to eat with me?

Where do you live?

I live in the colony Santa Julia. And you?

I live downtown in an apartment.

Do you want to eat lunch with me?

Yes. Where do you like to eat?

I like to eat at home but there is a small and good restaurant here around the corner. Let's go there.

Excellent. I am hungry.

What do you like to eat?

I like everything. Mexican food is very delicious.

Do you like hot spicy food?

Not a lot. And you?

Of course. I am a Mexican.



En el restaurante

Buenas tardes.

Buenas tardes. ¿Va a cenar?

Sí, quiero un menú y una coca con hielo, por favor.

Aquí está su menú y su coca.

— — — — —
¿Quiere ordenar ahora?

Sí, quiero las enchiladas suizas con arroz.

¿Quiere una ensalada?

Sí, una ensalada mixta, por favor.

¿Qué clase de aderezo quiere, italiano, ranch, o de la casa?

¿Cuál es el aderezo de la casa?

Es un aderezo con crema y mostaza. Es muy rico.

Bien, quiero el aderezo de la casa. Y otra coca, por favor, con poco hielo.

Muy bien.

— — — — —
Aquí está su comida. Cuidado, el plato está caliente. ... Su ensalada y su coca. ...

¿Algo más?

Nada más. Gracias.

Muy bien. Buen provecho.

— — — — —
¿Cómo está la comida, señor(a)?

Muy rica, gracias.

¿Necesita algo más? ¿Un postre?

¿Qué postres hay?

Hay flan, pastel de chocolate, y helado.

!Por qué no! Un flan y un café.

¿Quiere crema con el café?

Sí, por favor.

— — — — —
Su postre, señor(a), y el café.

Gracias. La cuenta, por favor.

In the restaurant

Good afternoon.

Good afternoon. Are you going to dine?

Yes, I want a menu and a coke with ice, please.

Here is your menu and your coke.

— — — — —
Do you want to order now?

Yes, I want the Swiss enchiladas with rice.

Do you want a salad?

Yes, a mixed salad, please.

What kind of dressing do you want, Italian, Ranch, or House?

Which is the house dressing?

It's a dressing with cream and mustard. It's very tasty.

Fine, I want the house dressing. And another coke, please, with a little ice.

Very well.

— — — — —
Here is your meal. Be careful, the plate is hot. ... Your salad and your coke. ...

Anything else?

Nothing more. Thanks.

Very well. Enjoy your meal.

— — — — —
How is the food, sir / madam?

Very tasty, thank you.

Do you need anything else? A dessert?

What desserts are there?

There is custard, chocolate cake, and ice cream.

Why not! A custard and a coffee.

Do you want cream with the coffee?

Yes, please.

— — — — —
Your dessert, sir / madam, and the coffee.

Thank you. The bill, please.



En la estación del autobús

Buenos días. ¿Hay un autobús directo a Puerto Vallarta?

Sí.

¿A qué hora sale?

Diario a las seis de la mañana y a las seis de la tarde.

¿Cuánto dura el viaje?

Seis horas.

¿Cuánto cuesta el boleto?

Cuarenta y cinco pesos.

Muy bien. Quiero dos para las 6 de la mañana.

¿Para cuándo?

Para mañana. ¿Tiene asientos cerca de la salida? Yo prefiero ventanilla.

Sí, tengo el 7 y 9. Son buenos asientos.

¿Hay alguna parada en el camino?

No, es directo, por eso se llama 'express.'

Bien. ¿Cuánto cuestan los dos boletos?

Noventa pesos, por favor.

Aquí tiene.

Bueno, dos boletos a Puerto Vallarta para mañana a las seis de la mañana. El autobús sale a tiempo. Necesita estar media hora antes.

Muchas gracias. Adiós.

Que le vaya bien.

At the bus station

Good day. Is there an express bus to Puerto Vallarta?

Yes.

What time does it leave?

Daily at six in the morning and six in the evening.

How long is the trip?

Six hours.

How much does the ticket cost?

Forty-five pesos.

Very well. I want two for six o'clock in the morning.

For when?

For tomorrow. Do you have seats near the door? I prefer a window seat.

Yes, I have 7 and 9. They're good seats.

Is there any stop on the way?

No, it's direct, that's why it's called 'express.'

Good. How much do two tickets cost?

Ninety pesos, please.

Here you are.

Good, two tickets to Puerto Vallarta for tomorrow at six in the morning. The bus leaves on time. You need to be a half hour early (before).

Thank you very much. Good bye.

That it goes well for you.



En el mercado

Buenas tardes.

Buenas tardes. ¿Qué va a llevar?

Fruta. ¿Cuánto cuesta la papaya por kilo?

Doce pesos.

Muy bien. Quiero una para hoy.

Ésta es perfecta para hoy.

¿Cuánto es?

Solamente siete pesos.

Bien, voy a llevarla.

¿Otra cosa?

Sí, unos plátanos. Un kilo por favor.

Cinco pesos. ¿Y qué más?

¿Qué fruta es ésta?

Es una guanábana.

¿Cómo es?

Es blanca por dentro y muy dulce.

¿Quiere probarla?

Sí, por favor.

Ummm! Tiene razón, es sabrosa.

¿Cuánto cuesta?

Tres pesos por kilo.

Un kilo, por favor.

¿No quiere aguacates?

Hoy no, gracias. Es todo.

Son quince pesos.

Aquí tiene cincuenta.

¿No tiene cambio?

No.

Aquí tiene treinta y cinco de cambio.
Muchas gracias. Adiós.

Gracias. Hasta la próxima.

At the market

Good afternoon.

Good afternoon. What are you going to carry (have)?

Fruit. How much does a kilo of papaya cost?

Twelve pesos.

Very well. I want one for today (ripe).

This one is perfect for today.

How much is it?

Just seven pesos.

Good, I'll take it.

Anything else?

Yes, some bananas. A kilo, please.

Five pesos. And what else?

What is this fruit?

It is a guanabana.

What's it like?

It's white inside and very sweet. Do you want to try it?

Yes, please.

Ummm! You're right, it is tasty. How much does it cost?

Three pesos per kilo.

One kilo, please.

Don't you want avocados?

Not today, thank you. That's all.

It's fifteen pesos.

Here you have 50.

Don't you have change?

No.

Here you have thirty-five in change.
Thank you very much. Good-bye.

Thank you. Until the next time.



En el banco

Buenos días, señorita.

Buenos días. ¿Puedo cambiar un cheque de viajero aquí?

Ahora no. Solamente hasta las once. Ya es la una. Tiene que regresar mañana.

¿Hay otro lugar dónde puedo cambiarlo hoy?

Possiblemente en una casa de cambio.

¿Hay una cerca?

Sí, a la derecha, una cuadra, en el otro lado de la calle.

Muchas gracias. Voy a tratar ahí.

Adios, que le vaya bien.

At the bank

Good day, miss.

Good day. Can I change a traveller's check here?

Not now. Only until 11:00. It's 1:00 now.
You have to come back tomorrow.

Is there another place where I can change it today?

Possibly at an exchange house.

Is there one nearby?

Yes, to the right, one block, on the other side of the street.

Thank you very much. I'm going to try there.

Goodbye, that it goes well for you.

Cita para desayunar

Buenas noches, Juan.

Buenas noches.

¿Qué vas a hacer mañana?

Voy a jugar tenis a las nueve, y después voy a desayunar. ¿Quieres jugar tenis?

No, es muy temprano para mí. ¿Pero no quieres comer conmigo después?

Sí. ¿Dónde?

No sé. ¿Adónde quieres ir?

Bueno, me gusta la comida en 'El Pegaso.'

A mí también. ¿A qué hora vamos?

¿Puedes estar allí a las diez?

Sí, entre las diez y las diez y media.

Qué bueno, entonces, en 'El Pegaso' entre las diez y diez y media.

Hasta luego.

Breakfast date

Good night, John.

Good night.

What are you going to do tomorrow?

I'm going to play tennis at 9, then I'm going to have breakfast. Do you want to play tennis?

No, that's very early for me. But don't you want to eat with me afterwards?

Yes. Where?

I don't know. Where do you want to go?

Well, I like the food at 'El Pegaso.'

Me, too. What time shall we go?

Can you be there at 10?

Yes, between 10 and 10:30.

Great, then, 'El Pegaso' between 10 and 10:30.

See you later.



Una nueva amiga

Buenos días, me llamo Mario.

Buenos días, me llamo Josefina.

Mucho gusto. ¿Habla español, Josefina?

Un poquito. Tomo clases en el Instituto.

¿Sí? ¿Quién es su maestro?

Se llama Felipe González.

Lo conozco. Es un buen maestro.

Sí, muy bueno y también muy simpático.

¿Y vive aquí en San Miguel o es turista?

Soy turista. Vivo en Colorado.

¿Cuánto tiempo tiene aquí en México?

Un mes. Voy a regresar a los Estados Unidos en agosto.

¿Estudia en los Estados Unidos?

Sí, en la Universidad de Colorado.

¿Qué estudia?

Estudio historia.

Me gusta la historia también. Necesita visitar San Miguel Viejo. Yo trabajo allí.

Sí, me gusta ver todos los lugares antiguos.

Mañana voy allá. ¿Quiere acompañarme?

Sí. Muchas gracias. ¿A qué hora va a salir?

Necesito estar allí a las diez.

Muy bien. Tengo mi clase a las ocho.

¿Puede pasar por mí a la escuela a las nueve?

Claro que sí. En el Instituto a las nueve.

Muchas gracias. Hasta mañana.

Adiós.

A new friend

Good day, my name is Mario.

Good day, my name is Josephine.

It's a pleasure (to meet you). Do you speak Spanish, Josephine?

A little. I take lessons at the Instituto.

Really? Who is your teacher?

He's called Felipe Gonzalez.

I know him. He's a good teacher.

Yes, very good, and also very nice.

And do you live here in San Miguel, or are you a tourist?

I am a tourist. I live in Colorado.

How much time do you have here in Mexico?

A month. I'm going to return to the United States in August.

Do you study in the United States?

Yes, at the University of Colorado.

What do you study?

I study history.

I also like history. You need to visit old San Miguel. I work there.

Yes, I like to see all the old places.

Tomorrow I'm going there. Do you want to accompany me?

Oh, yes. Thank you very much. What time are you going to leave?

I need to be there at ten.

Very well. I have my class at eight. Can you stop by for me at the school at nine?

Certainly. At the Instituto at nine.

Thank you very much. Until tomorrow.

Goodbye.

Section X

VOCABULARY

Common Mexican nouns

Here are some categories of common nouns in Mexican Spanish. It's not necessary to memorize these lists. Refer to them as you need them. Highlight those you want to learn first.

DRINKS, DESSERTS, MEALS

coffee	el café
— with cream	— con crema
— with sugar	— con azúcar
beer	la cerveza
ice	el hielo
juice	el jugo
milk	la leche
water	el agua
— natural, mineral	— natural, mineral
— purified	— purificada
cold drink (soda)	el refresco
tea	el té
— black	— negro
— mint	— yerbabuena
— camomile	— manzanilla
wine	el vino
cake	el pastel
custard	el flan
gum	el chicle
ice cream	el helado
nuts	las nueces
breakfast	el desayuno
lunch	la comida
dinner	la cena
dessert	el postre

FRUITS AND VEGETABLES

apple	la manzana
artichoke	la alcachofa
asparagus	el espárrago
avocado	el aguacate
banana	el plátano
cabbage	la col
cantalope	el melón
carrot	la zanahoria
cauliflower	la coliflor
cherry	la cereza
corn	el maíz
cucumber	el pepino
garlic	el ajo
grapes	las uvas
lettuce	la lechuga
lime/lemon	el limón
mushroom	el champiñón
onion	la cebolla
orange	la naranja
pineapple	la piña
potato	la papa
spinach	la espinaca
strawberry	la fresa
tomato	el tomate
watermelon	la sandía

MEATS AND STAPLES

beef	la carne de res
chicken	el pollo
turkey	el pavo
pork	la carne de cerdo
sausage (pork)	la salchicha, el chorizo
ham	el jamón
fish	el pescado
clams	la almeja
crab	el cangrejo
lobster	la langosta
shrimp	el camarón
beans	los frijoles
noodles	los fideos, las pastas
rice	el arroz
bread	el pan
butter	la mantequilla
honey	la miel
jam	la mermelada
rolls	los bolillos
egg	el huevo
cheese	el queso
cream	la crema
pepper	la pimienta
salt	la sal
sugar	el azúcar

STORES, BUILDINGS

bakery	la panadería
bank	el banco
bookstore	la librería
butchershop	la carnicería
dry cleaners	la tintorería
hardware store	la ferretería
gallery	la galería
jewelry store	la joyería
laundromat	la lavandería
market	el mercado
pharmacy	la farmacia
restaurant	el restaurante
shoe store	la zapatería
workshop	el taller
store	la tienda
cathedral	la catedral
cinema	el cine
gas station	la gasolinera
hospital	el hospital
house, home	la casa
library	la biblioteca
police station	la policía
printshop	la imprenta
school	la escuela

JOBS, WORK

architect	arquitecto
butcher	carnicero
carpenter	carpintero
cook	cocinero
dentist	dentista
doctor	médico
engineer	ingeniero
fisherman	pescador
gardener	jardinero
jeweler	joyero
lawyer	abogado
mason	albañil
mechanic	mecánico
painter	pintor
policeman	policía
priest	sacerdote
salesperson	vendedor
secretary	secretario
student	estudiante
taxi driver	taxista
teacher	maestro
waiter	mesero
boss	jefe
employer	patrón

CLOTHING, ETC.

blouse	la blusa
boots	las botas
dress	el vestido
hat	el sombrero
jacket	la chamarra
pants	los pantalones
pantyhose	las pantimedias
shirt	la camisa
shoes	los zapatos
skirt	la falda
socks	los calcetines
suit	el traje
tie	la corbata
earrings	los aretes
necklace	el collar
ring	el anillo
watch	el reloj
comb	el peine
lipstick	el lápiz labial
makeup	el maquillaje
razor blades	las hojas para afeitar
shaving cream	el jabón para afeitar
toothbrush	el cepillo dental
toothpaste	la pasta dental

PARTS OF THE BODY

arm	el brazo
back	la espalda
chest	el pecho
ears	los oídos
elbow	el codo
eyes	los ojos
face	la cara
finger	el dedo
foot	el pie
hair	el pelo
hand	la mano
heart	el corazón
knee	la rodilla
leg	la pierna
lips	los labios
liver	el hígado
lungs	los pulmones
mouth	la boca
neck	el cuello
nose	la nariz
shoulders	los hombros
stomach	el estómago
throat	la garganta
toe	el dedo del pie
tooth	el diente

FAMILY, FRIENDS

mother	la madre
father	el padre
parents	los padres
son	el hijo
daughter	la hija
children	los hijos
brother	el hermano
sister	la hermana
siblings	los hermanos
grandfather, -mother	el abuelo, la abuela
grandchild	el nieto, la nieta
husband, wife	el esposo, la esposa
uncle, aunt	el tío, la tía
cousin	el primo, la prima
nephew/neice	el sobrino, la sobrina
associate	el socio, la socia
boy-/girlfriend	el novio, la novia
godfather, -mother	el compadre
pal, twin	la comadre el cuate

ANIMALS

bear	el oso
bird	el pájaro
burro	el burro
cat	el gato, la gata
chicken	el pollo
cow	la vaca
deer	el venado
dog	el perro, la perra
elephant	el elefante
fish	el pez, el pescado (food)
fly	la mosca
goat	el cabrito
horse	el caballo
lion	el león
monkey	el chango
pig	el puerco
rabbit	el conejo
rat	el ratón
sheep	la oveja, el borrego
snake	la culebra
tiger	el tigre
turtle	la tortuga
whale	la ballena

GEOGRAPHY AND WEATHER

north	norte
south	sur
east	este
west	oeste
city	la ciudad
town, village	el pueblo
countryside	el campo
rural settlement	el rancho
state	el estado
country	el país
beach	la playa
desert	el desierto
forest	el bosque, la selva
hill	el cerro
island	la isla
lake	el lago
mountain	la montaña
ocean	el/la mar
river	el río
cold(ness)	frió
hot(ness)	caliente, calor
rain	la lluvia
wind	el viento

THE HOUSE

DINING ROOM	EL COMEDOR
LIVING ROOM	LA SALA
candle	la vela
chair	la silla
ceiling	el techo
closet	el closet
curtain	la cortina
door	la puerta
doorbell	el timbre
fireplace	la chimenea
floor	el piso
flowerpot	la maceta
heater	el calentador
key	la llave
lamp	la lámpara
light	la luz
lightbulb	el foco
lock	el candado
mirror	el espejo
rug	el tapete
sofa	el sofá, el sillón
table	la mesa
tile	el azulejo
wall	la pared
window	la ventana
KITCHEN	LA COCINA
stove	la estufa
oven	el horno
refrigerator	el refrigerador
sink	el fregadero
dishes (general)	los trastos
plate	el plato
bowl	el plato hondo
glass	el vaso
cup	la taza
fork	el tenedor
spoon	la cuchara
knife	el cuchillo
pan, pot	la olla
BEDROOM	LA RECÁMARA
bed	la cama
bedspread	la colcha
blanket	la cobija
nightstand	el buró
pillow	la almohada
sheets	las sábanas
bathroom	el baño
shower	la regadera
sink	el lavabo
toilet	el excusado
towel	la toalla

166 Common Mexican nouns

NUMBERS

1	uno
2	dos
3	tres
4	cuatro
5	cinco
6	seis
7	siete
8	ocho
9	nueve
10	diez

11	once
12	doce
13	trece
14	catorce
15	quince
16	diecisésis
17	diecisiete
18	dieciocho
19	diecinueve
20	veinte, veintiuno, veintidós ...
30	treinta, treinta y uno ...
40	cuarenta, cuarenta y uno ...
50	cincuenta, cincuenta y uno ...
60	sesenta, sesenta y uno ...
70	setenta, setenta y uno ...
80	ochenta, ochenta y uno ...
90	noventa, noventa y uno ...
100	cien
101	ciento uno
150	ciento cincuenta
175	ciento setenta y cinco
200	doscientos
300	trescientos
400	cuatrocientos
500	quinientos
600	seiscientos
700	setecientos
800	ochocientos
900	novecientos
1,000	mil
1,500	mil quinientos
1,000,000	un millón
primero	first
segundo	second
tercero	third
cuarto	fourth
quinto	fifth

TRANSPORT

bicycle	la bicicleta
boat	el barco
bus	el autobús
car	el coche
helicopter	el helicóptero
motorcycle	la motocicleta
pickup	la camioneta
plane	el avión
taxi	el taxi
train	el tren
truck	el camión
here	aquí
there	allí

DIRECTIONS

Not all of these are nouns but may be useful.

to the right	a la derecha
to the left	a la izquierda
straight	derecho
in front of	en frente de
in back of	atrás de
next to	al lado de
under	abajo de
above	arriba de
on top of	encima de
between	entre
inside of	dentro de
near	cerca de

on the corner	en la esquina
one block	una cuadra
street	la calle
alley, small street	el callejón
avenue	la avenida

DAYS, MONTHS, SEASONS

Monday	el lunes
Tuesday	el martes
Wednesday	el miércoles
Thursday	el jueves
Friday	el viernes
Saturday	el sábado
Sunday	el domingo

1. Days of the week in Spanish are not capitalized.
2. Days of the week usually start with *el* and the *el* will translate as 'on.'
- El lunes* means 'on Monday.'

January	enero
February	febrero
March	marzo
April	abril
May	mayo
June	junio
July	julio
August	agosto
September	septiembre
October	octubre
November	noviembre
December	diciembre

Spring	la primavera
Summer	el verano
Fall	el otoño
Winter	el invierno

Months and seasons in Spanish are not capitalized.

Dates are customarily noted with the day first, then the month, then the year. For example:

1 febrero 2004 or 1-2-04

-OR

el actor
el color
el doctor
el error
el exterior
el favor
el interior
el inventor
el profesor

Cognates are words that come from the same Latin roots and so they are essentially the same in Spanish and English. Here are some common noun cognates and how they are formed. *Go through these lists and highlight the words you think that you will use.*

-AL

el animal
la capital
la catedral
la credencial
el criminal
el general
el material
el metal
el oficial
el original
el total

-TION = -CIÓN

la acción
la administración
la autorización
la celebración
la colección
la comunicación
la condición
la contribución
la conversación
la cooperación
la corrupción
la decoración
la definición
la descripción
la dirección
la elección
la exhibición
la excepción
la infección
la información
la inspección
la nación
la obligación
la ocasión
la ocupación
la operación
la organización

-RY = -RIO

el aniversario
el comentario
el diccionario
el laboratorio
el notario
el salario
el secretario

-TY = -DAD

la autoridad
la calidad (quality)
la cantidad (quantity)
la capacidad
la comunidad
la electricidad
la flexibilidad
la felicidad
la hospitalidad
la humanidad
la identidad
la imposibilidad
la nacionalidad
la posibilidad
la publicidad
la realidad
la responsabilidad
la tranquilidad
la verdad
la velocidad

-IN = -INA

la medicina
la penicilina
la disciplina
la mina
la gasolina
la vitamina
la aspirina
la rutina

-IST = -ISTA

el/la artista
el/la dentista
el/la guitarrista
el/la novelista
el/la optimista
el/la pesimista
el/la pianista
el/la turista

-ENT = -ENTE

el accidente
el/la agente
el/la cliente
el continente
el/la paciente
el presidente

168 Common adjectives list

Here are some categories of common adjectives in Mexican Spanish.
It's not necessary to memorize these lists. Refer to them as you need them.
Highlight those you want to learn first.

QUANTITIES		CANTIDADES		DESCRIBING PEOPLE		DESCRIBIENDO A PERSONAS	
some		algunos, -as					
various		varios, -as					
few		poco, -a					
a little							
many,		mucho, -a					
a lot of							
more		más					
less		menos					
GOOD-BAD		BUENO-MALO		QUALITIES		CALIDADES	
good		bueno, -a		cheap		barato, -a	
bad		malo, -a		expensive		caro, -a	
better		mejor		hot		caliente	
worse		peor		warm		tibio, -a	
the best ...		el/lo*, la mejor		cold		frío, -a	
the worst ...		el/lo*, la peor		dry		seco, -a	
excellent		excelente		wet		mojado, -a	
terrible		terrible		simple		sencillo, -a	
*el/lo mejor/peor el mejor when used as noun (Es el mejor -- it's the best). el mejor... when used as an adjective (Es el mejor hotel -- It's the best hotel).		complicated		complicated		complicado, -a	
		easy		easy		fácil	
		difficult		difficult		difícil	
		useful		useful		útil	
		not useful		not useful		inútil	
		clean		clean		limpio, -a	
		dirty		dirty		sucio, -a	
		light		light		ligero, -a	
		heavy		heavy		pesado, -a	
SIZES		TAMAÑOS		COLORS		COLORES	
large		grande		blue		azul	
small		chico, -a		black		negro, -a	
medium		mediano, -a		brown		café	
wide		ancho, -a		golden		dorado, -a	
narrow		angosto, -a		green		verde	
long		largo, -a		grey		gris	
short		corto		orange		anaranjado, -a	
TEXTURES		TEXTURAS		pink		rosado, -a	
smooth		liso, -a		purple		morado, -a	
rough		áspero, -a		red		rojo, -a	
soft		suave		silver		plateado, -a	
hard		duro, -a		white		blanco, -a	
sharp		agudo, -a		yellow		amarillo, -a	
shiny		brilloso, -a					

There are many adjective cognates as well as noun cognates in Spanish.

Here are some common adjective cognates and how they are formed.

Go through these lists and highlight the words you think that you will use.

-AL

accidental
artificial
comercial
condicional
confidencial
cultural
condicional
esencial
excepcional
experimental
federal
final
formal
ilegal
industrial
intelectual
intencional
internacional
liberal
local
manual
municipal
nacional
normal
personal
profesional
puntual
social
tradicional
universal

IVE = IVO, -A

activo, -a
agresivo, -a
alternativo, -a
atractivo, -a
creativo, -a
defectivo, -a
defensivo, -a
descriptivo, -a
efectivo, -a
exclusivo, -a
explosivo, -a
expresivo, -a
informativo, -a
nativo, -a
negativo, -a
objetivo, -a
positivo, -a
primitivo, -a
productivo, -a
progresivo, -a
relativo, -a
subjetivo, -a

-IC = -ICO-A

atómico, -a
auténtico, -a
científico, -a
cosmético, -a
democrático, -a
diplomático, -a
dramático, -a
drástico, -a
económico, -a
elástico, -a
eléctrico, -a
erótico, -a
exótico, -a
fanático, -a
fantástico, -a
histórico, -a
irónico, -a
mágico, -a
mecánico, -a
pacífico, -a
plástico, -a
público, -a
romántico, -a
rústico, -a
sarcástico, -a
trágico, -a

Section IX

GLOSSARY

English to Spanish
and Spanish to English

This is the vocabulary used in this WorkBook.
Test yourself by covering one column and translating.

KEY	
adj	= adjective
adv	= adverb
art	= article
conj	= conjunction
int	= interrogative
n	= noun
prep	= preposition
pron	= pronoun
v	= verb

A

a little (adj, adv)	poco, -a
a lot [of] (adj)	mucho, -a
address (n)	la dirección
after (prep)	después [de]
afternoon (n)	la tarde
airport (n)	el aeropuerto
and (conj)	y
apartment (n)	el departamento
[time] ago	hace [tiempo]
all (adj)	todo
to answer (v)	contestar
appetizer (n)	la botana
to arrange (v)	arreglar
to arrive (v)	llegar
as soon as possible	cuanto antes
to ask for (v)	pedir
aspirin (n)	la aspirina
at (prep)	en

B

bag (n)	la bolsa
bank (n)	el banco
to bathe oneself (v)	bañarse
bathroom (n)	el baño
to be (feelings and location) (v)	estar
to be (description) (v)	ser
to be able to (v)	poder
because (conj)	porque
bed (n)	la cama
beer (n)	la cerveza
before (prep)	antes [de]
to begin (v)	empezar

to believe (v)	creer
below (prep)	abajo [de]
bill (n)	la cuenta
book (n)	el libro
bottle (n)	la botella
boy (n)	el muchacho, el niño
boyfriend (n)	el novio
breakfast (n)	el desayuno
to bring (v)	traer
brother (n)	el hermano
bus (n)	el autobús
to buy (v)	comprar
by (prep)	por

C

cake (n)	el pastel
call (n)	la llamada
candy (n)	el dulce
car (n)	el coche
to carry (v)	llevar
center (n)	el centro
chair (n)	la silla
change (n)	el cambio
to change (v)	cambiar
check (n)	el cheque
Chinese (adj)	chino, -a
class (n)	la clase
to clean (v)	limpiar
clothing (n)	la ropa
to close (v)	cerrar
coffee (n)	el café
cold (adj)	frío, -a
to come (v)	venir
computer (n)	la computadora
confirmation (n)	la confirmación
contract (n)	el contrato
to cook (v)	cocinar
countryside (n)	el campo
cream (n)	la crema

D

to dance (v)	bailar
daughter (n)	la hija
day (n)	el día
to decide (v)	decidir
dessert (n)	el postre
different (adj)	diferente

dinner (n)	la cena
dishes (n)	los trastes
to do (v)	hacer
dollar (n)	el dólar
door (n)	la puerta
(door) bell (n)	el timbre
downtown (n)	el centro
dream (n)	el sueño
drink (n)	la bebida
to drink (v)	tomar
to drive (v)	manejar

E

to earn (v)	ganar
earring (n)	el arete
to eat (v)	comer
egg (n)	el huevo
eight (n/adj)	ocho
every	cada
everything (n)	todo

F

to fall down (v)	caerse
fear (n)	el miedo
fifteen (n/adj)	quince
to fill (v)	llenar
film (n)	la película
to find (v)	encontrar
to finish (v)	terminar
first (adj)	primero, -a
five (adj)	cinco
to fix (v)	arreglar
to follow (v)	seguir
to forget (v)	olvidar
flower (n)	la flor
flowerpot (n)	la maceta
food (n)	la comida
football (soccer) (n)	futbol
for (intended for) (prep)	para
for (in exchange for) (prep)	por
[for] sure (adj)	[de] seguro, -a
four (adj)	cuatro
frequently (adv)	frecuentemente
Friday (n)	viernes
friend (n)	amigo, -a
from, of (prep)	de
from [time] (prep)	desde
front (reception) desk (n)	la recepción

G

to get (v)	conseguir
to get into (a vehicle) (v)	subir
to get out (of a vehicle) (v)	bajar
to get sick (v)	enfermarse
to get up (v)	levantarse
gift (n)	el regalo
girl (n)	la muchacha, la niña
girlfriend (n)	la novia
to give (v)	dar
to go (v)	ir
to go to bed (v)	acostarse
to go up (v)	subir
good (adj)	buen(o), -a
grape (n)	la uva
guest (n)	invitado, -a
guitar (n)	la guitarra

H

hand (n)	la mano
to have fun (v)	divertirse
to have (to) (v)	tener (que)
he (pron)	él
to hear (v)	oír
heat (n)	el calor
to help (v)	ayudar
her (adj)	su
her (pron)	ella, la
here (adj)	aquí
him (pron)	él, lo
his (adj)	su
history (n)	la historia
home (n)	la casa
hour (n)	la hora
house (n)	la casa
how much? (int)	cuánto
hunger (n)	hambre
hurry (n)	la prisa
husband (n)	el esposo

I

in (prep)	en
instruction (n)	la instrucción
instrument (n)	el instrumento
to introduce (v)	presentar
to invite (v)	invitar
it (pron)	él, ella, lo, la

J

jacket (n) la chamarra

K

key (n) la llave
kitchen (n) la cocina
 to **knock** (v) tocar
 to **know** (information) (v) saber
 to **know** (a person or place) (v) conocer

L

late (adj) tarde
later (adv) más tarde
 to **learn** (v) aprender
 to **leave** (v) salir
 to **leave** (behind) (v) dejar
lemonade (n) la limonada
letter (n) la carta
lesson (n) la lección
 to **lie down** (v) acostarse
 to **like** (v) gustar
 to **listen** (v) escuchar
 to **live** (v) vivir
 to **look for** (v) buscar
 to **lose** (v) perder
 a **lot [of]** (adj) mucho, -a
lunch (n) la comida

M

man (n) el hombre
market (n) el mercado
meat (n) la carne
 to **meet** (v) conocer
message (n) el recado
Mexican (adj) mexicano, -a
Mexico (n) México
midnight (n) medianoche
minute (n) el minuto
Monday (n) lunes
money (n) el dinero
more (adv) más
morning (n) mañana
 to **move** (v) mover
 to **move** (household) (v) mudarse
much (adv) mucho
music (n) la música
my (adj) mi

N

near (prep) cerca [de]
 to **need** (v) necesitar
neighborhood (n) la colonia
newspaper (n) el periódico
next (adj) próximo, -a
night (n) la noche
nine (n/adj) nueve
noon (n) mediodía
now (adv) ahora
number (n) el número

O

of (prep) de
office (n) la oficina
one (art, adj) uno, -a
onion (n) la cebolla
 to **open** (v) abrir
 to **order** (v) ordenar

P

package (n) el paquete
page (n) la página
park (n) el parque
party (n) la fiesta
 to **pass** (by) (v) pasar
 to **pay** (v) pagar
people (n) la gente
permission (n) el permiso
photo[graph] (n) la foto[grafía]
 to **play** (an instrument) (v) tocar
 to **play** (a sport) (v) jugar
please por favor
 to **prepare** (v) preparar
program (n) el programa
purified (adj) purificado, -a
 to **put** (v) poner

Q

question (n) la pregunta
quick(ly) (adj, adv) rápido, -a
 to **quit** (v) dejar (de)

R

to **read** (v) leer
 to **receive** (v) recibir

to recommend (v)	recomendar
to remain (v)	quedarse
to remember (v)	recordar
to remove (v)	quitar
rent (n)	la renta
reservation (n)	la reservación
to rest (v)	descansar
restaurant (n)	el restaurante
to return (v)	regresar
room (n)	el cuarto
row (n)	la fila
ruin (n)	la ruina
to run (v)	correr

S

Saturday (n)	sábado
to say (v)	decir
to see (v)	ver
to sell (v)	vender
to send (v)	mandar
seven (n/adj)	siete
several (adj)	varios, -as
she (pron)	ella
sheet (n)	la sábana
shoe (n)	el zapato
to sign (v)	firmar
to sing (v)	cantar
sister (n)	la hermana
to sit down (v)	sentarse
six (n/adj)	seis
to sleep (v)	dormir
sleepiness (n)	el sueño
soap opera (n)	la telenovela
soft drink (n)	el refresco
son (n)	el hijo
song (n)	la canción
soon (adv)	pronto
soup (n)	la sopa
souvenir (n)	el recuerdo
Spanish (n)	español
to speak (v)	hablar
to spend (v)	gastar
spicy-hot (adj)	picante
sport (n)	el deporte
stairs (n)	las escaleras
statue (n)	la estatua
to stay (v)	quedarse
store (n)	la tienda
student (n)	el, la estudiante

to study (v)	estudiar
sugar (n)	el azúcar
suitcase (n)	la maleta
Sunday (n)	domingo
[for] sure (adj)	[de] seguro, -a
sweet (adj)	el dulce

T

table (n)	mesa
to take (mode of transport) (v)	tomar
to take (a photo) (v)	sacar
tank (n)	el tanque
to taste (v)	probar
taxi (n)	el taxi
tea (n)	el té
teacher (n)	maestro, -a
telephone (n)	el teléfono
television (n)	la tele[visión]
to (prep)	a
ten (adj)	diez
tennis (n)	el tenis
to test (v)	probar
that (adj)	ese, -a
the (art)	el, la
there (adv)	allí
thing (n)	la cosa
to think [about] (v)	pensar
thirst (n)	el sed
this (adj)	este, -a
three (n/adj)	tres
Thursday (n)	jueves
ticket (n)	el boleto
time (n)	el tiempo
today (n)	hoy
tomorrow (n)	la mañana
tonight (adv)	esta noche
tooth (n)	el diente
to touch (v)	tocar
train (n)	el tren
trash (n)	la basura
to travel (v)	viajar
traveller (n)	el viajero
traveller's check	el cheque de viajero
trip (n)	el viaje
to try (v)	probar
to try [to] (v)	tratar [de]
Tuesday (n)	martes
two (adj)	dos

U

- under** (prep) abajo
to understand (v) entender
until (prep) hasta
to use (v) usar

V

- various** (adj) varios, -as
very (adv) muy
to visit (v) visitar

W

- to wait for** (v) esperar
to walk (v) caminar
to want (v) querer
to wash (v) lavar
to wash oneself (v) lavarse
water (n) el agua, las aguas (*f*)
to wear (v) llevar
Wednesday (n) miércoles
week (n) la semana

- well** (adv) bien
what? (int) qué
when? (int) cuándo
(b*to*) **where** (int) (a) dónde
which? (int) cuál
who? (int) quién
why? (int) por qué
wife (n) la esposa
to win (v) ganar
window (n) la ventana
wine (n) el vino
with (prep) con
with me (prep) conmigo
without (prep) sin
woman (n) la mujer
to work (v) trabajar
to worry (v) preocuparse
to write (v) escribir

Y

- year** (n) el año
you (formal) (pron) Usted, Ud.
your (formal) (adj) su

This is the vocabulary used in this WorkBook.
Test yourself by covering one column and translating.

KEY

adj	= adjective
adv	= adverb
art	= article
conj	= conjunction
int	= interrogative
nf	= feminine noun
nm	= masculine noun
nf/m	= feminine or masculine noun
prep	= preposition
pron	= pronoun
v	= verb

A

a (prep)	to
abajo (prep)	under, below
abrir (v)	to open
acostarse (v)	to lie down, go to bed
adónde (int)	(to) where?
aeropuerto (nm)	airport
agua (nf)	water
ahora (adv)	now
ahorita (adv)	right away
allí (adv)	there
amigo, -a (nm/f)	friend
antes [de] (prep)	before
año (nm)	year
aprender (v)	to learn
aquí (adv)	here
arete (nm)	earring
arreglar (v)	to fix, arrange
aspirina (nf)	aspirin
autobús (nm)	bus
ayudar (v)	to help
azúcar (nm)	sugar

B

bajar (v)	to get out (of a vehicle)
bailar (v)	to dance
banco (nm)	bank
bañarse (v)	to bathe oneself
baño (nm)	bathroom
basura (nf)	trash
bebida (nf)	drink
bien (adv)	well

boleto (nm)	ticket
bolsa (nf)	bag
botana (nf)	appetizer
botella (nf)	bottle
buen(o), -a (adj)	good
buscar (v)	to look for

C

cada (adj)	every
caerse (v)	to fall down
café (nm)	coffee
calor (nm)	heat
cama (nf)	bed
cambiar (v)	to change
cambio (nm)	change
caminar (v)	to walk
campo (nm)	countryside, field
canción (nf)	song
cantar (v)	to sing
carne (nf)	meat
carta (nf)	letter
casa (nf)	house, home
cebolla (nf)	onion
cena (nf)	dinner
centro (nm)	center, downtown
cerca (prep)	near
cerrar (v)	to close
cerveza (nf)	beer
chamarra (nf)	jacket
cheque (nm)	check
cheque de viajero	traveller's check
chino, -a (adj)	Chinese
cinco (n/adj)	five
cine (nm)	the cinema, movie theatre
clase (nf)	class
coche (nm)	car
cocina (nf)	kitchen
cocinar (v)	to cook
colonia (nf)	neighborhood
comer (v)	to eat
comida (nf)	food, lunch
comprar (v)	to buy
computadora (nf)	computer
con (prep)	with
confirmación (nf)	confirmation
conmigo	with me
contigo	with you (familiar)
conocer (v)	to meet, to know
conseguir (v)	to get

contestar (v)	to answer
contrato (nm)	contract
correr (v)	to run
cosa (nf)	thing
creer (v)	to believe
crema (nf)	cream
cuál (int)	which?
cuándo (int)	when?
cuánto (int)	how much?
cuanto antes	as soon as possible
cuarto (nf)	room
cuatro (n/adj)	four
cuenta (nf)	bill

D

dar (v)	to give
de (prep)	from, of
de seguro	for sure
decidir (v)	to decide
decir (v)	to say
dejar [de] (v)	to leave, quit
departamento (nm)	apartment
deporte (nm)	sport
desayuno (nm)	breakfast
descansar (v)	to rest
desde (time) (prep)	from
después [de] (prep)	after
día (nm)	day
diente (nm)	tooth
diferente (adj)	different
dinero (nm)	money
diez (n/adj)	ten
dirección (nf)	address
divertirse (v)	to have fun
dólar (nm)	dollar
dónde	where?
domingo (nm)	Sunday
dormir (v)	to sleep
dos (n/adj)	two
dulce (nm/adj)	candy, sweet

E

él, ella (pron)	he, she, him, her, it
empezar (v)	to begin
en (prep)	in, at
encontrar (v)	to find
enfermarse (v)	to get sick
entender (v)	to understand

escaleras (nf)	stairs
escribir (v)	to write
escuchar (v)	to listen
ese, -a (adj)	that
español (nm)	Spanish
esperar (v)	wait for, hope, expect
esposo, -a (nm/f)	husband/wife
estatua (nf)	statue
esta noche (adv)	tonight
estar (v)	to be
este, -a (adj)	this
estudiar (v)	to study
estudiante (nm/f)	student

F

fiesta (nf)	party
fila (nf)	row
firmar (v)	to sign
flor (nf)	flower
foto[grafía] (nf)	photograph
frecuentemente (adv)	frequently
frío, -a (adj)	cold
futbol (nm)	football (soccer)

G

ganar (v)	to earn, win
gastar (v)	to spend
gente (nf)	people
guitarra (nf)	guitar
gustar (v)	to like

H

hablar (v)	to speak
hace [tiempo]	[time] ago
hacer (v)	to do
hambre (nf)	hunger
hasta (prep)	until
hermano, -a (nm/f)	brother/sister
hijo, -a (nm/f)	son/daughter
historia (nf)	history
hombre (nm)	man
hora (nf)	hour [<i>¿a qué hora?</i> = At what time?]
hoy (n)	today
huevo (nm)	egg

I

- instrucción** (nf) instruction
instrumento (nm) instrument
invitado, -a (nm/f) guest
invitar (v) to invite
ir (v) to go

J

- jugar** (v) to play (a sport)
jueves (nm) Thursday

L

- lavar** (v) to wash
lavarse (v) to wash oneself
lección (nf) lesson
leer (v) to read
levantarse (v) to get up
libro (nm) book
limonada (nf) lemonade
llamada (nf) call
llave (nf) key
llegar (v) to arrive
llenar (v) to fill
llevar (v) to carry, wear
limpiar (v) to clean
lunes (nm) Monday

M

- maestro, -a** (nm/f) teacher
maceta (nf) flowerpot
maleta (nf) suitcase
mandar (v) to send
manejar (v) to drive
[la] mano (nf) hand
mañana (nf) morning, tomorrow
martes (nm) Tuesday
más (adv) more
medianoche (nf) midnight
mediodía (nm) noon
mercado (nm) market
mesa (nf) table
mexicano, -a (adj) Mexican
México (nm) Mexico
mi (adj) my
miedo (nm) fear
miércoles (nm) Wednesday

- minuto** (nm) minute
mover (v) to move
muchacho, -a (nm/f) boy, girl
mucho, -a (adj/adv) a lot [of], much
mudarse (v) to move (household)
mujer (nf) woman
música (nf) music
muy (adv) very

N

- necesar** (v) to need
niño, -a (nm/f) boy/girl
[esta] noche (adv) [to]night
novio, -a (nm/f) boy-/girlfriend
nueve (n/adj) nine
número (nm) number

O

- ochos** (n/adj) eight
oficina (nf) office
oír (v) to hear
olvidar (v) to forget
ordenar (v) to order

P

- pagar** (v) to pay
página (nf) page
paquete (nm) package
para [intended for] (prep) for
parque (nm) park
pasar (v) to pass (by), happen
pastel (nm) cake
pedir (v) to ask for
película (nf) film
pensar (v) to think (about)
perder (v) to lose
periódico (nm) newspaper
permiso (nm) permission
picante (adj) spicy-hot
poco, -a (adj, adv) a little
poder (v) to be able to
poner (v) to put
por [in exchange for] (prep) for, by
por qué (int) why?
por favor please
porque (conj) because

postre (nm)	dessert
pregunta (nf)	question
preocuparse (v)	to worry
preparar (v)	to prepare
presentar (v)	to introduce
primero, -a (adj)	first
prisa (nf)	hurry
probar (v)	to taste, test, try
programa (nm)	program
pronto (adv)	soon
próximo, -a (adj)	next
puerta (nf)	door
purificado, -a (adj)	purified

Q

qué (int)	what?
quedarse (v)	to remain, stay
querer (v)	to want
quién (int)	who?
quince (n/adj)	fifteen
quitar (v)	to remove

R

rápido, -a (adj)	quickly
recado (nm)	message
recepción (nf)	front (reception) desk
recibir (v)	to receive
recomendar (v)	to recommend
recordar (v)	to remember
recuerdo (nm)	souvenir
refresco (nm)	soft drink
regalo (nm)	gift
regresar (v)	to return
renta (nm)	rent
reservación (nf)	reservation
restaurante (nm)	restaurant
ropa (nf)	clothing
ruina (nf)	ruin

S

sábado (nm)	Saturday
sábana (nf)	sheet
saber (v)	to know (information)
sacar (v)	to take (a photo)
salir (v)	to leave
sed (nf)	thirst

seguir (v)	to follow
[de] seguro, -a (adj)	[for] sure
seis (n/adj)	six
semana (nf)	week
sentarse (v)	to sit down
ser (v)	to be (description)
siete (n/adj)	seven
silla (nf)	chair
sin (prep)	without
sopa (nf)	soup
su (adj)	your (formal), his, her, its
subir (v)	to go up, get into (a vehicle)
sueño (nm)	sleepiness, dream

T

tanque (nm)	tank
tarde (nf)	afternoon
[más] tarde (adv)	late(r)
taxi (nm)	taxi
té (nm)	tea
teléfono (nm)	telephone
telenovela (nf)	soap opera
tele[visión] (nf)	television
tener [que] (v)	to have [to]
tenis (nm)	tennis
terminar (v)	to finish
tiempo (nm)	time
tienda (nf)	store
timbre (nm)	(door)bell
tocar (v)	to play [instrument], touch, knock
todo (nm, adj)	everything, all
tomar (v)	to drink, take [mode of transport]
trabajar (v)	to work
traer (v)	to bring
tratar [de] (v)	to try [to]
trastes (nm)	dishes
tren (nm)	train
tres (n/adj)	three

U

uno, -a (art, adj)	one
usar (v)	to use
Usted (pron)	you (formal)
uva (nf)	grape

V

varios, -as (adj)	various, several
vender (v)	to sell
venir (v)	to come

ventana (nf)	window
ver (v)	to see
viajar (v)	to travel
viaje (nm)	trip
viajero (nm)	traveller
viernes (nm)	Friday
vino (nm)	wine
vino tinto / blanco	red/white wine
visitar (v)	to visit
vivir (v)	to live

Y

y (conj) and

Z

zapato (nm) shoe

